Application Note

BRT_AN_010

FT93x_User_Manual

Version 1.0

Issue Date: 2017-02-24

This application note provides details about the peripherals of the FT93x as well as the general system registers.

Bridgetek Pte Ltd (BRT Chip)
178 Paya Lebar Road, #07-03, Singapore 409030
Tel: +65 6547 4827 Fax: +65 6841 6071
Web Site: http://www.brtchip.com

Table of Contents

1 Introduction 12

2 FT93x System Architecture 13

2.1 Architecture Overview 13

2.2 Memory Organization 14

2.3 FT93x Boot Control 14

2.4 Debugging Support 15

3 Register Map 16

4 Notations 17

5 General System Registers 18

5.1 Register Summary 18

5.2 Register Details 20

5.2.1 CHIPID - Chip ID Register (address offset: 0x00) 20

5.2.2 CHIPCFG - Chip Configuration Register (address offset: 0x04) 20

5.2.3 CLKCFG - Clock Configuration Register (address offset: 0x08) 21

5.2.4 PMCFG - Power Management Register (address offset: 0x0C) 21

5.2.5 RESERVED (address offset: 0x10) 23

5.2.6 RESERVED (address offset: 0x14) 23

5.2.7 MSC0CFG - Miscellaneous Configuration Register (address offset: 0x18) 23

5.2.8 GPIO Pin Configuration Registers (address offset: 0x1C – 0x5F) 24

5.2.9 GPIO Configuration Registers (address offset: 0x60 – 0x70) 27

5.2.10 GPIO Value Registers (address offset: 0x84 – 0x88) 29

5.2.11 GPIO Interrupt Enable Registers (address offset: 0x90 – 0x94) 29

5.2.12 Interrupt Pending Registers (address offset: 0x9C – 0xA0) 30

5.2.13 DAC_ADC_CONF - ADC/DAC Configuration/Status Register (address offset: 0xB0) 30

5.2.14 DAC_ADC_CNT - ADC/DAC Count Register (address offset: 0xB4) 31

5.2.15 DAC_ADC_DATA - ADC/DAC Data Register (address offset: 0xB8) 32

5.2.16 GLOBAL_RESET_STATUS – Global Reset and Status Register (address offset: 0xBC) 32

6 Interrupt Controller 33

6.1 Register Summary 33

6.2 Register Details 34
6.2.1 IRQ00-03 Assignment Register (address offset: 0x00) 34
6.2.2 IRQ04-07 Assignment Register (address offset: 0x04) 34
6.2.3 IRQ08-11 Assignment Register (address offset: 0x08) 35
6.2.4 IRQ12-15 Assignment Register (address offset: 0x0C) 35
6.2.5 IRQ16-19 Assignment Register (address offset: 0x10) 35
6.2.6 IRQ20-23 Assignment Register (address offset: 0x14) 36
6.2.7 IRQ24-27 Assignment Register (address offset: 0x18) 36
6.2.8 IRQ28-31 Assignment Register (address offset: 0x1C) 36
6.2.9 IRQ Control Register (address offset: 0x20) 37
7 USB Device 38
7.1 Register Summary 38
7.2 Initialization Registers 40
7.2.1 DC_ADDRESS_ENABLE – Address Register (address offset: 0x18) 40
7.2.2 DC_MODE – Mode Register (address offset: 0x10) 40
7.2.3 DC_INT_ENABLE – Interrupt Enable Register (address offset: 0x08) 40
7.2.4 DC_EP_INT_ENABLE – Endpoints Interrupt Enable Register (address offset: 0x0C) 41
7.3 Control Endpoint Data flow Registers 41
7.3.1 DC_EP0_CONTROL – Endpoint 0 Control Register (address offset: 0x1C) 41
7.3.2 DC_EP0_STATUS – Endpoint 0 Status Register (address offset: 0x20) 41
7.3.3 DC_EP0_BUFFER_LENGTH – Endpoint 0 Buffer Length Register (address offset: 0x24) 42
7.3.4 DC_EP0_BUFFER – Endpoint 0 Buffer Register (address offset: 0x28) 42
7.4 Other Endpoint Data Flow Registers 42
7.4.1 DC_EP(x)_CONTROL – Endpoint Control Registers (address offset: 0x2C/0x3C/0x4C/0x5C/0x6C/0x7C/0x8C) 43
7.4.2 DC_EP(x)_STATUS – Endpoint Status Registers (address offset: 0x30/0x40/0x50/0x60/0x70/0x80/0x90) 43
7.4.3 DC_EP(x)_BUFFER_LENGTH_LSB – Endpoint Buffer Length LSB Registers (address offset: 0x34/0x44/0x54/0x64/0x74/0x84/0x94) 44
7.4.4 DC_EP(x)_BUFFER_LENGTH_MSB – Endpoint Buffer Length MSB Registers (address offset: 0x35/0x45/0x55/0x65/0x75/0x85/0x95) 45
7.4.5 DC_EP(x)_BUFFER – Endpoint Buffer Registers (address offset: 0x38/0x48/0x58/0x68/0x78/0x88/0x98) 45
7.5 General Registers 45
7.5.1 DC_INT_STATUS – Interrupt Status Register (address offset: 0x00) 45

7.5.2 DC_EP_INT_STATUS – Endpoints Interrupt Status Register (address offset: 0x04) 45
7.5.3 DC_FRAME_NUMBER_LSB – Frame Number LSB Register (address offset: 0x14) .. 46
7.5.4 DC_FRAME_NUMBER_MSB – Frame Number MSB Register (address offset: 0x15). 46
8 SD Host 47
8.1 Register Summary 47
8.2 Register Details 49
8.2.1 SDH_AUTO_CMD23_ARG2 – Auto CMD23 Argument 2 Register (address offset: 0x00) 49
8.2.2 SDH_BLK_SIZE – Block Size Register (address offset: 0x04) 50
8.2.3 SDH_BLK_COUNT – Block Count Register (address offset: 0x06) 50
8.2.4 SDH_ARG_1 – Argument 1 Register (address offset: 0x08) 50
8.2.5 SDH_TNSFER_MODE – Transfer Mode Register (address offset: 0x0C)..... 50
8.2.6 SDH_CMD – Command Register (address offset: 0x0E) 51
8.2.7 SDH_RESPONSE – Response Register (address offset: 0x10-0x1C) 52
8.2.8 SDH_BUF_DATA – Buffer Data Port Register (address offset: 0x20) 52
8.2.9 SDH_PRESENT_STATE – Present State Register (address offset: 0x24)..... 52
8.2.10 SDH_HST_CNTL_1 – Host Control 1 Register (address offset: 0x28)..... 54
8.2.11 SDH_PWR_CNTL – Power Control Register (address offset: 0x29) 54
8.2.12 SDH_BLK_GAP_CNTL – Block Gap Control Register (address offset: 0x2A) 55
8.2.13 SDH_CLK_CNTL – Clock Control Register (address offset: 0x2C) 55
8.2.14 SDH_TIMEOUT_CNTL – Timeout Control Register (address offset: 0x2E)..... 56
8.2.15 SDH_SW_RST – Software Reset Register (address offset: 0x2F) 56
8.2.16 SDH_NRML_INT_STATUS – Normal Interrupt Status Register (address offset: 0x30) 56
8.2.17 SDH_ERR_INT_STATUS – Error Interrupt Status Register (address offset: 0x32) 57
8.2.18 SDH_NRML_INT_ENABLE – Normal Interrupt Status Enable Register (address offset: 0x34) 57
8.2.19 SDH_ERR_INT_ENABLE – Error Interrupt Status Enable Register (address offset: 0x36) 58
8.2.20 SDH_NRML_INT_SGNL_ENABLE – Normal Interrupt Signal Enable Register (address offset: 0x38) 59
8.2.21 SDH_ERR_INT_SGNL_ENABLE – Error Interrupt Signal Enable Register (address offset: 0x3A) 59
8.2.22 SDH_AUTO_CMD12_ERR_STATUS – Auto CMD12 Error Status Register (address offset: 0x3C) 60
8.2.23 SDH_HOST_CNTL_2 – Host Control 2 Register (address offset: 0x3E)..... 60
8.2.24 SDH_CAP_1 – Capabilities Register 1 (address offset: 0x40) 61

8.2.25 SDH_CAP_2 – Capabilities Register 2 (address offset: 0x44) 61
8.2.26 SDH_RSRV_1 – Reserved 1 Register (address offset: 0x48) 62
8.2.27 SDH_RSRV_2 – Reserved 2 Register (address offset: 0x4C) 62
8.2.28 SDH_FORCE_EVT_CMD_ERR_STATUS – Force Event Register for Auto CMD Error Status (address offset: 0x50) 62
8.2.29 SDH_FORCE_EVT_ERR_INT_STATUS – Force Event for Error Interrupt Status Register (address offset: 0x52) 63
8.2.30 SDH_RSRV_3 – Reserved 3 Register (address offset: 0x54) 63
8.2.31 SDH_RSRV_4 – Reserved 4 Register (address offset: 0x58) 64
8.2.32 SDH_PRST_INIT - Preset value for initialization (address offset: 0x60) 64
8.2.33 SDH_PRST_DFLT_SPD – Preset value for default speed (address offset: 0x62) ... 64
8.2.34 SDH_PRST_HIGH_SPD – Preset value for the high speed (address offset: 0x64) . 65
8.2.35 SDH_PRST_SDR12 – Preset value for SDR12 (address offset: 0x66)..... 65
8.2.36 SDH_PRST_SDR25 – Preset value for SDR25 (address offset: 0x68)..... 65
8.2.37 SDH_PRST_SDR50 – Preset value for SDR50 (address offset: 0x6A)..... 66
8.2.38 SDH_PRST_SDR104 – Preset value for SDR104 (address offset: 0x6C) 66
8.2.39 SDH_PRST_DDR50 – Preset value for DDR50 (address offset: 0x6E) 67
8.2.40 SDH_RSRV_5 – Reserved 5 Register (address offset: 0xFC) 67
8.2.41 SDH_HC_VER – Host Controller Version Register (address offset: 0xFE)..... 67
8.2.42 SDH_VNDR_0 – Vendor-defined 0 Register (address offset: 0x100)..... 67
8.2.43 SDH_VNDR_1 – Vendor-defined 1 Register (address offset: 0x104)..... 68
8.2.44 SDH_VNDR_2 – Vendor-defined 2 Register (address offset: 0x108)..... 69
8.2.45 SDH_VNDR_3 – Vendor-defined 3 Register (address offset: 0x10C) 69
8.2.46 SDH_VNDR_4 – Vendor-defined 4 Register (address offset: 0x110)..... 69
8.2.47 SDH_VNDR_5 – Vendor-defined 5 Register (address offset: 0x114)..... 69
8.2.48 SDH_VNDR_6 – Vendor-defined 6 Register (address offset: 0x118)..... 69
8.2.49 SDH_VNDR_7 – Vendor-defined 7 Register (address offset: 0x11C) 70
8.2.50 SDH_VNDR_8 – Vendor-defined 8 Register (address offset: 0x120)..... 70
8.2.51 SDH_VNDR_9 – Vendor-defined 9 Register (address offset: 0x124)..... 70
8.2.52 SDH_RSRV_6 – Reserved 6 Register (address offset: 0x128)..... 70
8.2.53 SDH_HW_ATTR – Hardware Attributes Register (address offset: 0x178) 70
8.2.54 SDH_CPR_MOD_CNTL – Cipher Mode Control Register (address offset: 0x180) ... 71
8.2.55 SDH_CPR_MOD_STATUS – Cipher Mode Status Register (address offset: 0x184) 72
8.2.56 SDH_CPR_MOD_STATUS_EN – Cipher Mode Status Enable Register (address offset: 0x188)..... 72

8.2.57 SDH_CPR_MOD_SIG_EN – Cipher Mode Signal Enable Register (address offset: 0x18A) 72
8.2.58 SDH_IN_DATA_LSB – Input Data LSB Register (address offset: 0x18C) 72
8.2.59 SDH_IN_DATA_MSB - Input Data MSB Register (address offset: 0x190) 72
8.2.60 SDH_IN_KEY_LSB – Input Key LSB Register (address offset: 0x194) 73
8.2.61 SDH_IN_KEY_MSB – Input Key MSB Register (address offset: 0x198) 73
8.2.62 SDH_OUT_DATA_LSB – Output Data LSB Register (address offset: 0x19C) 73
8.2.63 SDH_OUT_DATA_MSB – Output Data MSB Register (address offset: 0x1A0) 73
8.2.64 SDH_SCRT_CONS_DATA – Secret Constant Table Data Port (address offset: 0x1A4) 73

9 UART 74

9.1 Register Summary 75

9.2 UART MODE SELECTION 77

9.3 STANDARD 550 COMPATIBLE REGISTERS 78

9.3.1 UART_RBR - Receiver Buffer Register (address offset: 0x00 and LCR[7] = 0) 78
9.3.2 UART_THR - Transmitter Holding Register (address offset: 0x00 and LCR[7] = 0) . 79
9.3.3 UART_DIV_LSB - Divisor LSB Register (address offset: 0x00 and LCR[7] = 1) 79
9.3.4 UART_DIV_MSB - Divisor MSB Register (address offset: 0x01 and LCR[7] = 1) 79
9.3.5 UART_INT_ENABLE - Interrupt Enable Register (address offset: 0x01) 79
9.3.6 UART_INT_STATUS - Interrupt Status Register (address offset: 0x02)..... 80
9.3.7 UART_FCR - FIFO Control Register (address offset: 0x02) 81
9.3.8 UART_LCR - Line Control Register (address offset: 0x03) 83
9.3.9 UART_MCR - Modem Control Register (address offset: 0x04)..... 83
9.3.10 UART_LSR - Line Status Register (address offset: 0x05) 84
9.3.11 UART_MSR - Modem Status Register (address offset: 0x06) 85
9.3.12 UART_SPR - SPR Register (address offset: 0x07) 86

9.4 650 COMPATIBLE REGISTERS 86

9.4.1 UART_EFR - Enhanced Feature Register (address offset: 0x02)..... 86
9.4.2 UART_XON1 - XON1 Register (address offset: 0x04) 87
9.4.3 UART_XON2 - XON2 Register (address offset: 0x05) 87
9.4.4 UART_XOFF1 - XOFF1 Register (address offset: 0x06) 87
9.4.5 UART_XOFF2 - XOFF2 Register (address offset: 0x07) 87

9.5 950 COMPATIBLE REGISTERS 88

9.5.1 UART_ASR - Additional Status Register (address offset: 0x01) 88
9.5.2 UART_RFL - Receiver FIFO Level Register (address offset: 0x03) 88

9.5.3 UART_TFL - Transmitter FIFO Level Register (address offset: 0x04) 88
9.5.4 UART_ICR - ICR Register (address offset: 0x05) 89
9.6 INDEXED CONTROL REGISTERS 89
9.6.1 UART_ACR - Additional Control Register (SPR offset: 0x00) 91
9.6.2 UART_CPR - Clock Prescaler Register (SPR offset: 0x01) 91
9.6.3 UART_TCR - Time Clock Register (SPR offset: 0x02) 92
9.6.4 UART_CKS - Clock Select Register (SPR offset: 0x03) 92
9.6.5 UART_TTL - Transmitter Trigger Level Register (SPR offset: 0x04) 93
9.6.6 UART_RTL - Receiver Trigger Level Register (SPR offset: 0x05) 93
9.6.7 UART_FCL - Flow Control Level LSB Register (SPR offset: 0x06) 93
9.6.8 UART_FCH - Flow Control Level Register MSB (SPR offset: 0x07) 93
9.6.9 UART_ID1 - Identification 1 Register (SPR offset: 0x08) 94
9.6.10 UART_ID2 - Identification 2 Register (SPR offset: 0x09) 94
9.6.11 UART_ID3 - Identification 3 Register (SPR offset: 0x0A) 94
9.6.12 UART_REV - Revision Register (SPR offset: 0x0B) 94
9.6.13 UART_CSR - Channel Software Reset Register (SPR offset: 0x0C) 94
9.6.14 UART_NMR - Nine Bit Mode Register (SPR offset: 0x0D) 94
9.6.15 UART_MDM - Modem Disable Mask Register (SPR offset: 0x0E) 95
9.6.16 UART_RFC - Readable FCR Register (SPR offset: 0x0F) 96
9.6.17 UART_GDS - Good Data Status Register (SPR offset: 0x10) 96
9.6.18 UART_RSRV_1 - Reserved 1 Register (SPR offset: 0x11) 96
9.6.19 UART_PIDX - Port Index Register (SPR offset: 0x12) 96
9.6.20 UART_CKA - Clock Alteration Register (SPR offset: 0x13) 96
10 Timers and Watchdog 97
10.1 Register Summary 98
10.2 Register Details 98
10.2.1 TIMER_CONTROL_0 - Timers Control Register 0 (address offset: 0x00) 98
10.2.2 TIMER_CONTROL_1 - Timers Control Register 1 (address offset: 0x01) 98
10.2.3 TIMER_CONTROL_2 - Timers Control Register 2 (address offset: 0x02) 99
10.2.4 TIMER_CONTROL_3 - Timers Control Register 3 (address offset: 0x03) 99
10.2.5 TIMER_CONTROL_4 - Timers Control Register 4 (address offset: 0x04) 99
10.2.6 TIMER_INT - Timers Interrupt Register (address offset: 0x05) 99
10.2.7 TIMER_SELECT - Timers A..D Select Register (address offset: 0x06) 100
10.2.8 TIMER_WDG - Watchdog Start Value (address offset: 0x07) 100
10.2.9 TIMER_WRITE_LS - Timer A..D Start Value 7:0 (address offset: 0x08) 100

10.2.10 TIMER_WRITE_MS - Timer A..D Start Value 15:8 (address offset: 0x09) 100
10.2.11 TIMER_PRESC_LS - Prescaler Start Value 7:0 (address offset: 0x0A) 100
10.2.12 TIMER_PRESC_MS - Prescaler Start Value 15:8 (address offset: 0x0B) 100
10.2.13 TIMER_READ_LS - Timer A..D Current Value 7:0 (address offset: 0x0C) 101
10.2.14 TIMER_READ_MS - Timer A..D Current Value 15:8 (address offset: 0x0D).....101

11 SPI Master 102

11.1 Register Summary 102

11.2 Register Details 103

11.2.1 SPIM_CNTL – Control Register (address offset: 0x00) 103
11.2.2 SPIM_STATUS – Status Register (address offset: 0x04) 103
11.2.3 SPIM_DATA – Receiver and Transmitter Data Registers (address offset: 0x08) ..104
11.2.4 SPIM_SLV_SEL_CNTL – Slave Select Control Register (address offset: 0x0C).....104
11.2.5 SPIM_FIFO_CNTL – FIFO Control Register (address offset: 0x10) 104
11.2.6 SPIM_TNSFR_FRMT_CNTL – Transfer Format Control Register (address offset: 0x14) 105
11.2.7 SPIM_ALT_DATA – Alternative SPI Master Data Register (address offset: 0x18).105
11.2.8 SPIM_RX_FIFO_COUNT – SPI Master RX FIFO Count Register (address offset: 0x1C) 105
11.2.9 SPIM_CNTL_2 – Control 2 Register (address offset: 0x20).....106
11.2.10 SPIM_STATUS_2 – Status 2 Register (address offset: 0x30) 106
11.2.11 SPIM_FIFO_CNTL_2 – FIFO Control 2 Register (address offset: 0x34) 107
11.2.12 SPIM_TX_FIFO_COUNT – SPI Master TX FIFO Count Register (address offset: 0x38) 107
11.2.13 SPIM_BAUD – SPI Master Baud Register (address offset: 0x3C) 107

12 SPI Slave 108

12.1 Register Summary 108

12.2 Register Details 109

12.2.1 SPIS_CNTL – Control Register (address offset: 0x00) 109
12.2.2 SPIS_STATUS – Status Register (address offset: 0x04).....109
12.2.3 SPIS_DATA – Receiver and Transmitter Data Registers (address offset: 0x08)..110
12.2.4 SPIS_SLV_SEL_CNTL – Slave Select Control Register (address offset: 0x0C) 110
12.2.5 SPIS_FIFO_CNTL – FIFO Control Register (address offset: 0x10) 110
12.2.6 SPIS_TNSFR_FRMT_CNTL – Transfer Format Control Register (address offset: 0x14) 111
12.2.7 SPIS_ALT_DATA – Alternative SPI Slave Data Register (address offset: 0x18) ...111

12.2.8 SPIS_RX_FIFO_COUNT – SPI Slave RX FIFO Count Register (address offset: 0x1C) 111
12.2.9 SPIS_CNTL_2 – Control 2 Register (address offset: 0x20) 111
12.2.10 SPIS_STATUS_2 – Status 2 Register (address offset: 0x30) 112
12.2.11 SPIS_FIFO_CNTL_2 – FIFO Control 2 Register (address offset: 0x34) 113
12.2.12 SPIS_TX_FIFO_COUNT – SPI Slave TX FIFO Count Register (address offset: 0x38) 113
12.2.13 SPIS_BAUD – SPI Slave Baud Register (address offset: 0x3C) 113
13 I²C Master 114
13.1 Register Summary 114
13.2 Register Details 115
13.2.1 I2CM_SLV_ADDR – Slave Address Register (address offset: 0x00) 115
13.2.2 I2CM_CNTL – Control Register (address offset: 0x01) 115
13.2.3 I2CM_STATUS – Status Register (address offset: 0x01) 115
13.2.4 I2CM_DATA – Receive / Transmit Data Register (address offset: 0x02) 116
13.2.5 I2CM_TIME_PERIOD – Timer Period Register (address offset: 0x03) 116
13.2.6 I2CM_HS_TIME_PERIOD – High Speed Timer Period Register (address offset: 0x03) 116
13.2.7 I2CM_FIFO_LEN – FIFO Mode Byte Length (address offset: 0x04) 117
13.2.8 I2CM_FIFO_INT_ENABLE – FIFO Mode Interrupt Enable (address offset: 0x05) 117
13.2.9 I2CM_FIFO_INT_PEND – FIFO Mode Interrupt Pending (address offset: 0x06) 117
13.2.10 I2CM_FIFO_DATA - FIFO Data Register (address offset: 0x07) 118
13.2.11 I2CM_TRIG - Trigger Register (address offset: 0x08) 118
14 I²C Slave 119
14.1 Register Summary 119
14.2 Register Details 119
14.2.1 I2CS_OWN_ADDR – Own Address Register (address offset: 0x00) 119
14.2.2 I2CS_CNTL – Control Register (address offset: 0x01) 120
14.2.3 I2CS_STATUS – Status Register (address offset: 0x01) 120
14.2.4 I2CS_DATA – Receive / Transmit Data Register (address offset: 0x02) 121
14.2.5 I2CS_FIFO_LEN – FIFO Mode Byte Length (address offset: 0x04) 121
14.2.6 I2CS_FIFO_INT_ENABLE – FIFO Mode Interrupt Enable (address offset: 0x05) 121
14.2.7 I2CS_FIFO_INT_PEND – FIFO Mode Interrupt Pending (address offset: 0x06) 122
14.2.8 I2CS_FIFO_DATA - FIFO Data Register (address offset: 0x07) 122
14.2.9 I2CS_TRIG - Trigger Register (address offset: 0x08) 122

15 RTC 123
15.1 Register Summary 123
15.2 Register Details 123
15.2.1 RTC_TIME – Time Register (address offset: 0x00) 123
15.2.2 RTC_DATE – Date Register (address offset: 0x04) 124
15.2.3 RTC_AALARM1 – Auto Alarm 1 Register (address offset: 0x08) 124
15.2.4 RTC_AALARM2 – Auto Alarm 2 Register (address offset: 0x0C) 125
15.2.5 RTC_CTRL – Control Register (address offset: 0x10) 125
15.2.6 RTC_STAT - Status Register (address offset: 0x14) 126
15.2.7 RTC_TRIM – Trimming Register (address offset: 0x18) 127
15.2.8 RTC_SLE_TIME – Sleep Time Register (address offset: 0x1C) 127
15.2.9 RTC_SLE_DATE – Sleep Date Register (address offset: 0x20) 128
15.2.10 RTC_COMP_PER – Compare Period Register (address offset: 0x24) 128
15.2.11 RTC_VREF_TRIM – LVREF Trimming Value (address offset: 0x28) 128
16 PWM 129
16.1 Register Summary 129
16.2 Register Details 130
16.2.1 PWM_CTRL0 - PCM Control Register (address offset: 0x00) 130
16.2.2 PWM_CTRL1 - PWM Control Register (address offset: 0x01) 131
16.2.3 PWM_PRESCALER - PWM Prescaler Register (address offset: 0x02) 131
16.2.4 PWM_CNTL - PWM Counter Register (LSB) (address offset: 0x03) 132
16.2.5 PWM_CNTH - PWM Counter Register (MSB) (address offset: 0x04) 132
16.2.6 PWM_CMP0L - Comparator 0 Value Register (LSB) (address offset: 0x05) 132
16.2.7 PWM_CMP0H - Comparator 0 Value Register (MSB) (address offset: 0x06) 132
16.2.8 PWM_CMP1L - Comparator 1 Value Register (LSB) (address offset: 0x07) 132
16.2.9 PWM_CMP1H - Comparator 1 Value Register (MSB) (address offset: 0x08) 132
16.2.10 PWM_CMP2L - Comparator 2 Value Register (LSB) (address offset: 0x09) 133
16.2.11 PWM_CMP2H - Comparator 2 Value Register (MSB) (address offset: 0x0A) 133
16.2.12 PWM_CMP3L - Comparator 3 Value Register (LSB) (address offset: 0x0B) 133
16.2.13 PWM_CMP3H - Comparator 3 Value Register (MSB) (address offset: 0x0C) 133
16.2.14 PWM_CMP4L - Comparator 4 Value Register (LSB) (address offset: 0x0D) 133
16.2.15 PWM_CMP4H - Comparator 4 Value Register (MSB) (address offset: 0x0E) 133
16.2.16 PWM_CMP5L - Comparator 5 Value Register (LSB) (address offset: 0x0F) 134
16.2.17 PWM_CMP5H - Comparator 5 Value Register (MSB) (address offset: 0x10) 134

16.2.18 PWM_CMP6L - Comparator 6 Value Register (LSB) (address offset: 0x11) 134
16.2.19 PWM_CMP6H - Comparator 6 Value Register (MSB) (address offset: 0x12) 134
16.2.20 PWM_CMP7L - Comparator 7 Value Register (LSB) (address offset: 0x13) 134
16.2.21 PWM_CMP7H - Comparator 7 Value Register (MSB) (address offset: 0x14) 135
16.2.22 PWM_TOGGLE0 - Channel 0 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask Register (address offset: 0x15) 135
16.2.23 PWM_TOGGLE1 - Channel 1 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask Register (address offset: 0x16) 135
16.2.24 PWM_TOGGLE2 - Channel 2 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask Register (address offset: 0x17) 135
16.2.25 PWM_TOGGLE3 - Channel 3 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask Register (address offset: 0x18) 135
16.2.26 PWM_TOGGLE4 - Channel 4 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask Register (address offset: 0x19) 135
16.2.27 PWM_TOGGLE5 - Channel 5 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask Register (address offset: 0x1A) 136
16.2.28 PWM_TOGGLE6 - Channel 6 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask Register (address offset: 0x1B) 136
16.2.29 PWM_TOGGLE7 - Channel 7 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask Register (address offset: 0x1C) 136
16.2.30 PWM_OUT_CLR_EN - PWM OUT Clear Enable Register (address offset: 0x1D) ..136
16.2.31 PWM_CTRL_BL_CMP8 - Control Block CMP8 Value Register (address offset: 0x1E) 136
16.2.32 PWM_INIT - PWM Initialization Register (address offset: 0x1F) 136
16.2.33 PWM_INTMASK - PWM Interrupt Mask Register (address offset: 0x20) 137
16.2.34 PWM_INTSTATUS - PWM Interrupt Status Register (address offset: 0x21) 137
16.2.35 PWM_SAMPLE_FREQ_H - PWM Data Sampling Frequency High Byte Register (address offset: 0x22) 137
16.2.36 PWM_SAMPLE_FREQ_L - PWM Data Sampling Frequency Low Byte Register (address offset: 0x23) 138
16.2.37 PCM_VOLUME - PCM Volume Register (address offset: 0x24) 138
16.2.38 PWM_BUFFER - PCM Buffer Register (address offset: 0x3C) 138

17 Flash Controller..... 139

17.1 Register Summary 139

17.2 Register Details 140

17.2.1 RSADDR0 – Memory Start Address Register (LSB) (address offset: 0x00) 140
17.2.2 RSADDR1 – Memory Start Address Register (Byte 1) (address offset: 0x01).....140
17.2.3 RSADDR2 – Memory Start Address Register (MSB) (address offset: 0x02).....140

17.2.4 FSADDR0 – Flash Start Address Register (LSB) (address offset: 0x03) 141
17.2.5 FSADDR1 – Flash Start Address Register (Byte 1) (address offset: 0x04) 141
17.2.6 FSADDR2 – Flash Start Address Register (MSB) (address offset: 0x05) 141
17.2.7 BLENGTH0 – Data Byte Length Register (LSB) (address offset: 0x06) 141
17.2.8 BLENGTH1 – Data Byte Length Register (Byte 1) (address offset: 0x07) 141
17.2.9 BLENGTH2 – Data Byte Length Register (MSB) (address offset: 0x08) 141
17.2.10 COMMAND – Command Register (address offset: 0x09) 142
17.2.11 SEMAPHORE – Semaphore Register (address offset: 0x0B) 142
17.2.12 CONFIG – Configuration Register (address offset: 0x0C) 142
17.2.13 STATUS – Status Register (address offset: 0x0D) 143
17.2.14 CRCL – Flash Content CRC Register (LSB) (address offset: 0x0E) 143
17.2.15 CRCH – Flash Content CRC Register (MSB) (address offset: 0x0F) 143
17.2.16 CHIPID0 – Chip ID Register (LSB) (address offset: 0x7C) 143
17.2.17 CHIPID1 – Chip ID Register (Byte 1) (address offset: 0x7D) 143
17.2.18 CHIPID2 – Chip ID Register (Byte 2) (address offset: 0x7E) 144
17.2.19 CHIPID3 – Chip ID Register (MSB) (address offset: 0x7F) 144
17.2.20 DRWDATA – Data Register (address offset: 0x80) 144

17.3 Flash Controller Commands 144

18 Contact Information 149

Appendix A – References 1

Document References 1

Acronyms and Abbreviations 1

Appendix B – List of Tables & Figures 3

List of Tables 3

List of Figures 11

Appendix C – Revision History 12

1 Introduction

FT93x is a programmable System-on-chip device that sports a 32-bit RISC core that runs at 100MHz and is complemented by a D2xx[1] hardware engine and a wide assortment of connectivity options. It is ideally suited as a high speed data bridging workhorse. The description of the general system registers, as well as the register set of various peripheral interfaces, is explained in detail in this document.

[1] Used under agreement between BRT and FTDI, D2xx is the popular FTDI USB driver used on its FT2xx USB UART/FIFO Bridge platforms. It can be accessed directly or through a virtual COM port.

2 FT93x System Architecture

2.1 Architecture Overview

The diagram below shows the block diagram of FT93x. The FT93x contains the latest variant of the FT32 core, called FT32B. FT32B supports mixed 16-bit and 32-bit instructions which helps to increase code density and relieves flash memory pressure. 128kB of flash storage is provided on-chip and which is fully shadowed into a 128kB zero wait-state program memory area for fast execution. 32kB of data memory is available for stack, global and other data. The 1-wire module is used as the debug access port and doubles up as a flash download port. All peripherals in the FT93x are memory mapped.

The features of the FT93x series include:

- 100MHz 16-bit and 32-bit mixed mode instructions capable RISC core
- USB 2.0 Compliant High Speed Device Controller
- Battery Charger Detection conformant to USB Battery Charging Specification Rev 1.2
- Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller (NVIC)
- 4 x UARTs
- 1 x SPI master interface
- 1 x SPI slave interface
- 8 x PWM channels with digital filter on channel 0 and 1
- 1 x I^2C master interface
- 1 x I^2C slave interface
- 1 x SD-Host Controller conformant to SD Association SD Host Controller Specification V3.0
- 1 x Real Time Clock
- 1 x Watchdog timer
- 4 x 16-bit General purpose timers
- 1 x 1-wire debug interface
- 3-channel 8-bit 480kS/s ADC
- 2-channel 10-bit 1MS/s DAC
- 40 multi-purpose GPIOs

The block diagram shown in Figure 2.1 illustrates the main peripherals of the FT93x.

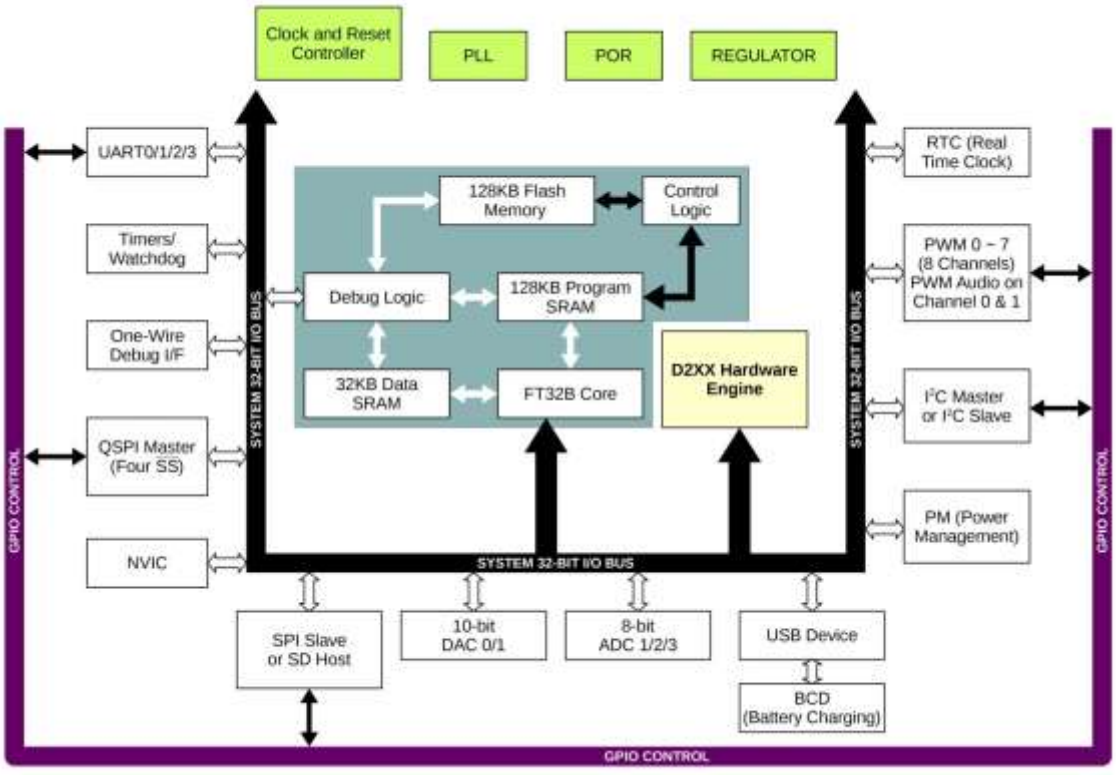

Figure 2.1 - FT93x System Architecture

2.2 Memory Organization

The first 144 bytes in the Program Memory contain the following:

- Reset vector
- Watchdog vector
- 32 interrupt vectors
- Program entry point

Address	Function
0x00	Reset vector
0x04	Watchdog vector
0x08	Interrupt vector 0
0x0C	Interrupt vector 1
…	…
0x80	Interrupt vector 30
0x84	Interrupt vector 31
0x88	Interrupt vector 32 (NMI)
0x8C	Program entry point

Table 2-1 - FT93x Program Memory Organization

2.3 FT93x Boot Control

Upon reset, boot control takes control of the memory buses and puts the CPU in a reset state.

It automatically transfers the data from the flash memory to the CPU program memory, starting from address 0 on both sides. Boot control calculates a CRC check over the entire contents of flash (128 kB) and the result is placed in CRCH and CRCL registers found in the Flash Controller module.

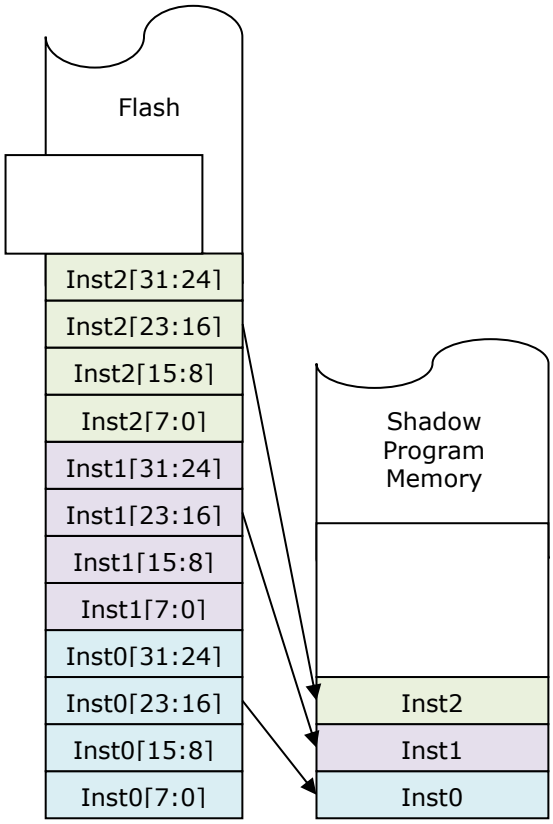

Figure 2.2 - FT93x Boot Control

2.4 Debugging Support

Debugging the FT93x series is carried out via the proprietary One-Wire interface. The debugging support is implemented in the FT93x bootloader. The protocol used for debugging is the GDB remote protocol and a port of GDB is available in the Bridgetek FT93x toolchain. The GDB serial debug protocol commands are interpreted by a debug interpreter in the bootloader.

In addition, the debug interpreter:

- Saves all machine states
- Executes commands received over the debug interface
- Restores all machine states and returns

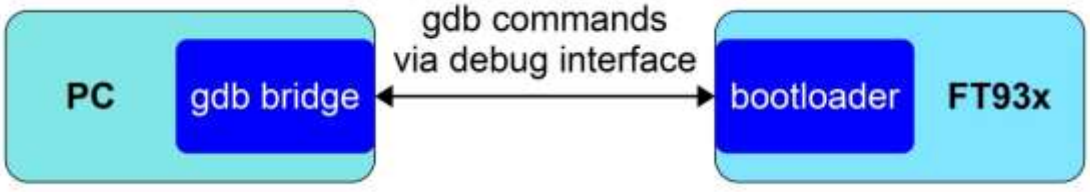

Figure 2.3 - FT93x Debugging Support

3 Register Map

This section lists the I/O map for registers / memory in the device. Please note that some peripherals are not available on some models in the FT93x series. The details can be found in the table below. An (X) indicates that the peripheral exists and a minus (-) indicates that the peripheral is not available. All other peripherals that are not mentioned are available on all models in the series.

	UART0 / 1	UART 2 / 3	SPI Master	SPI Slave	I2C Master / Slave	RTC	DAC 0 / 1	ADC 1	ADC 2 / 3	USB Device	PWM 0 - 3	PWM 4 - 7	SD Host Controller
FT930	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
FT931	x	-	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
FT932	x	-	x	x	x	-	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
FT933	x	-	x	x	x	-	-	-	x	x	x	-	-

Table 3-1 - Peripheral Availability on FT93x Series Models

The register map of the peripherals is as follows:

Function	Address Base Range		Access Mechanism*
General Setup	0x10000	0x100FF	DW, W, B
Interrupt Controller	0x10100	0x1013F	DW, W, B
USB Device	0x10200	0x1031F	DW, W, B
RTC	0x10400	0x1043F	DW
SPI Master	0x10440	0x1047F	DW
SPI Slave	0x10480	0x104BF	DW
I2C Master	0x10500	0x1050F	B
I2C Slave	0x10510	0x1051F	B
UART 0	0x10520	0x1052F	B
UART 1	0x10530	0x1053F	B
UART 2	0x10540	0x1054F	B
UART 3	0x10550	0x1055F	B
Timers/Watchdog	0x10560	0x1056F	B
PWM	0x105B0	0x105EF	B for registers, W for FIFO
SD Host	0x10600	0x107FF	DW
Flash Controller	0x10800	0x108BF	B

***** DW (Double-Word): 32-bit; W (Word): 16-bit; B (Byte): 8-bit

Table 3-2 - Register Map for FT93x Series

4 Notations

These notations are used in the register descriptions:

Terms	Description
Reserved	Do not read/write the location
RO	Read-only
ROC	Read-only/Clear-when-read
RW	Read and Writable
RW1C	Read and Write-1-to-clear
RW1S	Read and Write-1-to-set
RWAC	Read and Writable with automatic clear
W1S	Write-1-to-set
W1T	Write-1-to-trigger-event
WO	Write-only

Table 4-1 - Notations used in Register Description

5 General System Registers

This section describes the registers that govern the general behavior of the FT93x.

5.1 Register Summary

Listed below are the registers with their offset from the base address (0x10000). All registers can be accessed via Byte (8-bit), Word (16-bit) or Double-Word (32-bit) mode.

Address Offset	Register	Default Value	Reference
0x00	CHIPID - Chip ID Register	0xXXXXXXXX	Section 5.2.1
0x04	CHIPCFG - Chip Configuration Register	0xXXXXXXXX	Section 5.2.2
0x08	CLKCFG - Clock Configuration Register	0x00000000	Section 5.2.3
0x0C	PMCFG - Power Management Register	0x00000000	Section 5.2.4
0x10	Reserved	-	Section 5.2.5
0x14	Reserved	-	Section 5.2.6
0x18	MSC0CFG - Miscellaneous Configuration Register	0x00000000	Section 5.2.7
0x1C	Pin 00 – 03 Register	0x04080808	Section 5.2.8.1
0x20	Pin 04 – 07 Register	0x04040404	Section 5.2.8.2
0x24	Pin 08 – 11 Register	0x04040404	Section 5.2.8.3
0x28	Pin 12 – 15 Register	0x04040404	Section 5.2.8.4
0x2C	Pin 16 – 19 Register	0x04040404	Section 5.2.8.5
0x30	Pin 20 – 23 Register	0x04040404	Section 5.2.8.6
0x34	Pin 24 – 27 Register	0x04040404	Section 5.2.8.7
0x38	Pin 28 – 31 Register	0x04040404	Section 5.2.8.8
0x3C	Pin 32 – 35 Register	0x04040404	Section 5.2.8.9
0x40	Pin 36 – 39 Register	0x04040404	Section 5.2.8.10
0x60	GPIO 00 – 07 Configuration Register	0x00000000	Section 5.2.9.1
0x64	GPIO 08 – 15 Configuration Register	0x00000000	Section 5.2.9.2
0x68	GPIO 16 – 23 Configuration Register	0x00000000	Section 5.2.9.3
0x6C	GPIO 24 – 31 Configuration Register	0x00000000	Section 5.2.9.4
0x70	GPIO 32 – 39 Configuration Register	0x00000000	Section 5.2.9.5
0x84	GPIO 00 – 31 Value Register	0x00000000	Section 5.2.10.1
0x88	GPIO 32 – 39 Value Register	0x00000000	Section 5.2.10.2
0x90	GPIO 00 – 31 Interrupt Enable Register	0x00000000	Section 5.2.11.1

Address Offset	Register	Default Value	Reference
0x94	GPIO 32 – 39 Interrupt Enable Register	0x00000000	Section 5.2.11.2
0x9C	GPIO 00 – 31 Interrupt Pending Register	0x00000000	Section 5.2.12.1
0xA0	GPIO 32 – 39 Interrupt Pending Register	0x00000000	Section 5.2.12.2
0xB0	DAC_ADC_CONF - ADC/DAC Configuration/Status Register	0x00000000	Section 5.2.13
0xB4	DAC_ADC_CNT - ADC/DAC Count Register	0x63XXXXXX	Section 5.2.14
0xB8	DAC_ADC_DATA - ADC/DAC Data Register	0x00000000	Section 5.2.15
0xBC	5.2.28 GLOBAL_RESET_STATUS – Global Reset and Status Register	0x00000000	Section 5.2.16

Table 5-1 - Overview of General System Registers

5.2 Register Details

5.2.1 CHIPID - Chip ID Register (address offset: 0x00)

This register is read-only.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:0	Chip ID	RO	0x093XXXXX	The two MSBs (093X) depict FT93x series and the two LSBs (XXXX) shows the revision of the chip.

Table 5-2 - CHIPID - Chip ID Register

For revision 0001 of the FT93x series, the pre-configured bits of the chip ID register (CHIPID) are listed in the table below. Note that these bits are always read-only.

	CHIPID [31..16]	CHIPID [15..0]
FT930Q	0X0930	0X0001
FT931Q	0X0931	0X0001
FT932Q	0X0932	0X0001
FT933Q	0X0933	0X0001

Table 5-3 - FT93x Series Chip ID Configuration

5.2.2 CHIPCFG - Chip Configuration Register (address offset: 0x04)

This register contains read-only information.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31-28	Reserved	-	-	Reserved
27	1-Wire_ACTIVE	RO	X	If set, the 1-wire debug interface is enabled; otherwise it's permanently disabled.
26:20	Reserved	-	X	Reserved
19	Reserved	-	X	Reserved
18	Reserved	-	X	Reserved
17	FLASH_WR_B1_ENA	RO	X	If set, FLASH write/erase to bytes 65536 – 131071 is allowed; otherwise it is permanently non-writable/non-erasable.
16	FLASH_WR_B0_ENA	RO	X	If set, FLASH write/erase to bytes 0 – 65535 is allowed; otherwise it is permanently non-writable/non-erasable.
15:0	Reserved	-		Reserved

Table 5-4 - CHIPCFG - Chip Configuration Register

5.2.3 CLKCFG - Clock Configuration Register (address offset: 0x08)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:20	Reserved	-	-	Reserved
19:16	CPU_CLK_DIV	RW	0	CPU Clock frequency setting: 0 : CPU at full system clock speed 1 : CPU at system clock / 2 2 : CPU at system clock / 4 3 : CPU at system clock / 8 4 : CPU at system clock / 64 5 : CPU at system clock / 128 6 : CPU at system clock / 512
15	Reserved	-	-	-
14	DEV_ENA (only valid for non-D2XX mode)	RW	0	Set to "1" to enable USB Device when it is not in D2XX mode (reg_d2xx_mode=0).
13	Reserved		-	-
12	SD _ENA	RW	0	1 : enable SD Host Controller
11:10	Reserved		-	-
9	I2CM _ENA	RW	0	1 : enable I2C Master
8	I2CS _ENA	RW	0	1 : enable I2C Slave
7	SPIM _ENA	RW	0	1 : enable SPI Master
6	SPIS _ENA	RW	0	1 : enable SPI Slave
5	Reserved	-	-	-
4	UART0 _ENA	RW	0	1 : enable UART 0
3	UART1 _ENA	RW	0	1 : enable UART 1
2	PWM _ENA	RW	0	1 : enable PWM
1	UART3 _ENA	RW	0	1 : enable UART 3
0	UART2 _ENA	RW	0	1 : enable UART 2

Table 5-5 - CLKCFG - Clock Configuration Register

5.2.4 PMCFG - Power Management Register (address offset: 0x0C)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31	RTC_ALARM_IRQ_PEND	RW1C	0	RTC Alarm Wake Up interrupts pending; write 1 to clear. This bit will be set when the RTC alarm is active while it is in sleep mode.
30:27	Reserved	-	-	
26	SLAVE_PERI_IRQ_PEND (only valid for D2XX mode)			SLAVE Wake Up interrupt pending; write 1 to clear. This bit will be set when there is a wake up event from the D2XX Engine
25	PM_GPIO_IRQ_PEND	RW1C	0	GPIO interrupt during system shut down with clock not running; write 1 to clear.
24	SLOWCLK_5ms_IRQ_PEND (only valid for non-D2XX mode)	RW1C	0	Slow clock 5ms timer interrupts pending; write 1 to clear. If enabled, an interrupt will be generated.
23:21	Reserved	-	-	-
20	DEV_CONN_DEV (only valid for non-D2XX mode)	RW1C	0	Device Connect Interrupt pending to USB Device; write 1 to clear. If enabled, an interrupt will be generated on PM irq.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
19	DEV_DIS_DEV (only valid for non-D2XX mode)	RW1C	0	Device Disconnect Interrupt pending to USB Device; write 1 to clear. If enabled, an interrupt will be generated on PM irq.
18	HOST_RST_DEV (only valid for non-D2XX mode)	RW1C	0	Host Reset Interrupt pending to USB Device; write 1 to clear. If enabled, an interrupt will be generated on PM irq.
17	HOST_RESUME_DEV (only valid for non-D2XX mode)	RW1C	0	Host Resume Interrupt pending to USB Device; write 1 to clear. If enabled, an interrupt will be generated on PM irq.
16	Reserved	-	-	-
15	DIS_DISCONN_DET (only valid for non-D2XX mode)	RW	0	1: To disable Device Disconnection detection. 0: To enable Device Disconnection detection.
14:13	Reserved	-	-	-
12	RTC_ALARM_IRQ_EN	RW	0	RTC Alarm Wake Up Interrupt Enable; if this bit is set, an interrupt will be generated on PM irq when RTC_ALARM_IRQ_PEND becomes active.
11	SLAVE_PERI_IRQ_EN (only valid for D2XX mode)	RW	0	SLAVE Wake Up Interrupt Enable; If this bit is set, an interrupt will be generated on PM irq when SLAVE_PERI_IRQ_PEND becomes active.
10	DEV_PHY_EN (only valid for non-D2XX mode)	RW	0	1 : Enable USB Device Phy. 0 : USB Device Phy is in Suspend.
9	PM_PWRDN_MODE	RW	0	1 : disable system oscillator when powering down 0 : do not disable system oscillator when powering down
8	PM_PWRDN	RW	0	1 : power down system. This bit should be cleared after the system wakes up or at least 60-100us prior to setting it to 1 again.
7	SLOWCLOCK_5ms_IRQ_EN (only valid for non-D2XX mode)	RW	0	1 : enable slow clock 5ms timer interrupt.
6	SLOWCLOCK_5ms_START (only valid for non-D2XX mode)	RW1	0	1 : To start the 1-shot slow clock 5ms timer; once started it cannot be stopped. This bit will be cleared automatically when the timer expires.
5	Reserved	-	-	-
4	FORCE_DEV_DET (only valid for non-D2XX mode)	RW	0	Normally device activity detection is performed only when required, setting this bit will force the PM to check for device connection activities regardless.
3:2	Reserved	-	-	-
1	DEV_DETECT_EN (only valid for non-D2XX mode)	RW	0	1 : Enable device connect/disconnect to external host or external host reset detection. Enable interrupt to pm irq when any of DEV_CONN_DEV, DEV_DIS_DEV and HOST_RST_DEV is set.
0	Reserved	-	-	-

Table 5-6 - PMCFG - Power Management Configuration Register

5.2.5 RESERVED (address offset: 0x10)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:1	Reserved	RO	0	-
0	Reserved	-	-	-

Table 5-7 - Reserved

5.2.6 RESERVED (address offset: 0x14)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:1	Reserved	RO	0	-
0	Reserved	-	-	-

Table 5-8 - Reserved

5.2.7 MSC0CFG - Miscellaneous Configuration Register (address offset: 0x18)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31	PERI_SOFTRESET	RWAC	0	Write 1 to cause a soft reset to all peripherals. It is automatically cleared.
30	PWM_SOFTRESET	RWAC	0	Write 1 to cause a soft reset to PWM. It is automatically cleared.
29	UART3_CLKSEL	RW	0	Clock Select for UART3.
28	UART3_FIFOSEL	RW	0	FIFO Selection for UART3.
27	UART3_INTSEL	RW	0	INT Selection for UART3.
26	UART2_CLKSEL	RW	0	Clock Select for UART2.
25	UART2_FIFOSEL	RW	0	FIFO Selection for UART2.
24	UART2_INTSEL	RW	0	INT Selection for UART2.
23	HIGH_SPEED_MODE (only valid for non-D2XX mode)	RO	0	1: it indicates USB is in high speed mode. 0: it indicates USB is in full speed mode.
22	USB_VBUS_EN (only valid for non-D2XX mode)	RW	0	Write 0 followed by 1 to enable the VBUS detection circuit. DEV_CONN_DEV is set when VBUS is detected. This bit is reset when USB Device is reset.
21	UART0_CLKSEL	RW	0	Clock Select for UART0.
20	UART0_FIFOSEL	RW	0	FIFO Selection for UART0.
19	UART0_INTSEL	RW	0	INT Selection for UART0.
18	UART1_CLKSEL	RW	0	Clock Select for UART1.
17	UART1_FIFOSEL	RW	0	FIFO Selection for UART1.
16	UART1_INTSEL	RW	0	INT Selection for UART1.
15:13	Reserved	-	-	-
12	DEV_RMWAKEUP (only valid for non-D2XX mode)	RW	0	1 : Drive K-state on USB Device port; software must maintain the 1ms requirement before turning it off.
11	DEV_RESET_ALL (only valid for non-D2XX mode)	RWAC	0	Write 1 to reset USB Device Controller and USB Device PHY; it is automatically cleared immediately.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
10	DEV_RESET_CONTROLLER (only valid for non-D2XX mode)	RWAC	0	Write 1 to cause USB Dev Controller reset; it is automatically cleared immediately.
9	DEV_RESET_ATX (only valid for non-D2XX mode)	RW	0	Write 1 to cause USB Dev PHY reset; it is automatically cleared immediately.
8:5	Reserved	-	-	-
4	BCD_SOFTRESET (only valid for non-D2XX mode)	WO	0	1 : Generate software reset to BCD Dev : if BCDDEV_EN = 1 It is automatically cleared immediately
4	BCDDEV_DETECT_RUNNING	RO	0	1 : indicates BCD Device detection is running
3	BCDDEV_EN (only valid for non-D2XX mode)	WO	0	1 : enable Battery Charger Detection Device. This bit is cleared by writing a 1 to BCD_SOFTRESET.
3	BCDDEV_DETECT_COMPLETE	RO	0	1 : indicates BCD Device detection is done.
2	BCDDEV_SD_EN (only valid for non-D2XX mode)	WO	1	1 : enable secondary detection for details.
2	BCDDEV_SDP_FOUND	RO	0	1 : SDP detected
1	BCDDEV_VDP_EN_POST_DCP (only valid for non-D2XX mode)	WO	0	1 : enable connection of V_{DP_SRC} after DCP detection
1	BCDDEV_CDP_FOUND	RO	0	1 : CDP detected
0	BCDDEV_LGC_COMP_INHIB (only valid for non-D2XX mode)	WO	1	1 : disable logic comparison during BCD detections
0	BCDDEV_DCP_FOUND	RO	0	1 : DCP detected

Table 5-9 - MSC0CFG - Miscellaneous Configuration Register

5.2.8 GPIO Pin Configuration Registers (address offset: 0x1C – 0x5F)

These registers control the pin configurations. Each register houses the configuration for 4 digital pins. Each byte of the register configures 1 digital pin. The pin direction for each of the special functions is fixed and is set automatically. A pin that is configured as a GPIO can be further configured. Refer to the GPIO Configuration Registers in section 5.2.9.

The bit layout for the Pin Configuration Registers is as follows:

Bit	Description	Value	Configuration
31:30 23:22 15:14 7:6	Pin Functionality	00 01 10 11	GPIO Function Special Function 1 Special Function 2 (if available) Special Function 3 (if available)
29:28 21:20 13:12 5:4	Output drive capability	00 01 10 11	4mA 8mA 12mA 16mA
27:26 19:18 11:10 3:2	With Pull-up / Pull-down	00 01 10 11	None 75kΩ Pull-down 75kΩ Pull-up 75kΩ Keeper

Bit	Description	Value	Configuration
25 17 9 1	Schmitt	0 1	Normal Schmitt
24 16 8 0	Slew Rate	0 1	Fast Slow

Table 5-10 - Pin Configuration Register Description

The following tables give more details about each Pin Configuration Register. The "Pin Functionality Bits" section refers to bits 31:30, 23:22, 15:14, 7:6 in each register for configuring the corresponding pin to perform a specific function. Refer to Table 5.10 above.

5.2.8.1 Pin 00 – 03 register (address offset: 0x1C)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Pin Functionality Bits			
				00	01	10	11
31:24	PIN03_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 3	SS(S)	DATA0(SD)	-
23:16	PIN02_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 2	MOSI(S)	CD(SD)	-
15:8	PIN01_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 1	MISO(S)	CMD(SD)	-
7:0	PIN00_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 0	SCK(S)	CLK(SD)	-

Table 5-11 - Pin 00 – 03 Register

5.2.8.2 Pin 04 – 07 Register (address offset: 0x20)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Pin Functionality Bits			
				00	01	10	11
31:24	PIN07_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 7	PWM4	WP(SD)	
23:16	PIN06_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 6	PWM5	DATA3(SD)	
15:8	PIN05_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 5	PWM6	DATA2(SD)	PWM1
7:0	PIN04_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 4	PWM7	DATA1(SD)	PWM0

Table 5-12 - Pin 04 – 07 Register

5.2.8.3 Pin 08 – 11 Register (address offset: 0x24)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Pin Functionality Bits			
				00	01	10	11
31:24	PIN11_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 11	PWM0	-	
23:16	PIN10_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 10	PWM1	-	
15:8	PIN09_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 9	PWM2	-	
7:0	PIN08_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 8	PWM3	-	

Table 5-13 - Pin 08 – 11 Register

5.2.8.4 Pin 12 – 15 Register (address offset: 0x28)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Pin Functionality Bits			
				00	01	10	11
31:24	PIN15_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 15	TXD(U3)	-	-
23:16	PIN14_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 14	RXD(U3)	-	-
15:8	PIN13_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 13	SDA(M)	SDA(S)	-
7:0	PIN12_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 12	SCL(M)	SCL(S)	-

Table 5-14 - Pin 12 – 15 Register

5.2.8.5 Pin 16 – 19 Register (address offset: 0x2C)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Pin Functionality Bits			
				00	01	10	11
31:24	PIN19_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 19	DSR(U3)	TXD(U4)	-
23:16	PIN18_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 18	DTR(U3)	RXD(U4)	-
15:8	PIN17_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 17	CTS(U3)		-
7:0	PIN16_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 16	RTS(U3)		-

Table 5-15 - Pin 16 – 19 Register

5.2.8.6 Pin 20 – 23 Register (address offset: 0x30)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Pin Functionality Bits			
				00	01	10	11
31:24	PIN23_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 23	TXD(U1)	PWM2	-
23:16	PIN22_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 22	RXD(U1)	PWM3	-
15:8	PIN21_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 21	RI(U3)	CTS(U4)	-
7:0	PIN20_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 20	DCD(U3)	RTS(U4)	-

Table 5-16 - Pin 20 – 23 Register

5.2.8.7 Pin 24 – 27 Register (address offset: 0x34)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Pin Functionality Bits			
				00	**01**	**10**	**11**
31:24	PIN27_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 27	DSR(U1)	TXD(U2)	-
23:16	PIN26_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 26	DTR(U1)	RXD(U2)	-
15:8	PIN25_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 25	CTS(U1)	PWM0	-
7:0	PIN24_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 24	RTS(U1)	PWM1	-

Table 5-17 - Pin 24 – 27 Register

5.2.8.8 Pin 28 – 31 Register (address offset: 0x38)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Pin Functionality Bits			
				00	01	10	11
31:24	PIN31_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 31	SS1(SPIM)	-	-
23:16	PIN30_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 30	SS0(SPIM)	-	-
15:8	PIN29_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 29	RI(U1)	CTS(U2)	SS0(SPIM)
7:0	PIN28_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 28	DCD(U1)	RTS(U2)	-

Table 5-18 - Pin 28 – 31 Register

5.2.8.9 Pin 32 – 35 Register (address offset: 0x3C)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Pin Functionality Bits			
				00	01	10	11
31:24	PIN35_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 35	MISO(SPIM)	MISO(SPIS)	-
23:16	PIN34_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 34	SCK(SPIM)	SCK(SPIS)	-
15:8	PIN33_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 33	SS3(SPIM)	-	-
7:0	PIN32_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 32	SS2(SPIM)	-	-

Table 5-19 - Pin 32 – 35 Register

5.2.8.10 Pin 36 – 39 Register (address offset: 0x40)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Pin Functionality Bits			
				00	01	10	11
31:24	PIN39_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 39	VBUS Detect	-	-
23:16	PIN38_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 38	IO3O(SPIM)	RTC_REF	-
15:8	PIN37_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 37	IO2O(SPIM)	SS(SPIS)	-
7:0	PIN36_CFG	RW	8'h04	GPIO 36	MOSI(SPIM)	MOSI(SPIS)	-

Table 5-20 - Pin 36 – 39 Register

5.2.9 GPIO Configuration Registers (address offset: 0x60 – 0x70)

These registers control the GPIO configurations. Each register houses the configuration for 8 digital pins. Each nibble of the register configures 1 digital pin.

All GPIOs can function as an interrupt. The polarity can be either positive edge or negative edge if its interrupt capability is enabled. If this feature is desired, the pin must be configured as a GPIO input. Otherwise unpredictable behavior may result.

There is no debouncing for any GPIOs. If they are used as general inputs, and debouncing is needed, then the software must handle the debouncing routine. If it is to be used as an interrupt, the external interrupt source should be glitch free.

The bit layout for the GPIO Configuration Registers is as follows:

Bit	Description	Value	Configuration
31:30 27:26 23:22 19:18 15:14 11:10 7:6 3:2	GPIO Direction	00 01 1X	Input Output Open-Drain Output
29 25 21 17 13 9 5 1	Interrupt Capable (Also see section 5.2.11, "GPIO Interrupt Enable Registers")	0 1	Disabled Enabled
28 24 20 16 12 8 4 0	Interrupt Edge (only if Interrupt Capable bit is 1)	0 1	Falling Edge Rising Edge

Table 5-21 - GPIO Configuration Register Description

The following tables give more details about which bits control a specific GPIO Pin using the values from Table 5-21.

5.2.9.1 GPIO 00 – 07 Configuration Register (address offset: 0x60)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:28	GPIO07_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 7
27:24	GPIO06_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 6
23:20	GPIO05_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 5
19:16	GPIO04_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 4
15:12	GPIO03_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 3
11:8	GPIO02_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 2
7:4	GPIO01_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 1
3:0	GPIO00_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 0

Table 5-22 - GPIO 00 – 07 Configuration Register

5.2.9.2 GPIO 08 – 15 Configuration Register (address offset: 0x64)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:28	GPIO15_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 15
27:24	GPIO14_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 14
23:20	GPIO13_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 13
19:16	GPIO12_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 12
15:12	GPIO11_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 11
11:8	GPIO10_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 10
7:4	GPIO09_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 9
3:0	GPIO08_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 8

Table 5-23 - GPIO 08 – 15 Configuration Register

5.2.9.3 GPIO 16 – 23 Configuration Register (address offset: 0x68)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:28	GPIO23_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 23
27:24	GPIO22_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 22
23:20	GPIO21_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 21
19:16	GPIO20_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 20
15:12	GPIO19_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 19
11:8	GPIO18_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 18
7:4	GPIO17_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 17
3:0	GPIO16_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 16

Table 5-24 - GPIO 16 – 23 Configuration Register

5.2.9.4 GPIO 24 – 31 Configuration Register (address offset: 0x6C)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:28	GPIO31_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 31
27:24	GPIO30_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 30
23:20	GPIO29_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 29
19:16	GPIO28_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 28
15:12	GPIO27_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 27
11:8	GPIO26_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 26
7:4	GPIO25_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 25
3:0	GPIO24_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 24

Table 5-25 - GPIO 24 – 31 Configuration Register

5.2.9.5 GPIO 32 – 39 Configuration Register (address offset: 0x70)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:28	GPIO39_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 39
27:24	GPIO38_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 38
23:20	GPIO37_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 37
19:16	GPIO36_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 36
15:12	GPIO35_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 35
11:8	GPIO34_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 34
7:4	GPIO33_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 33
3:0	GPIO32_CFG	RW	0	For GPIO 32

Table 5-26 - GPIO 32 – 39 Configuration Register

5.2.10 GPIO Value Registers (address offset: 0x84 – 0x88)

These registers contain the values for the GPIO pins. Each register contains the value of 32 digital pins except the last register, which only contains the value of 8 pins (32 to 39). Each bit of the register maps to the corresponding digital pin.

5.2.10.1 GPIO 00 – 31 Value Register (address offset: 0x84)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:0	GPIO_VAL_IN[31:0]	RO	X	Input values of GPIO 31 – GPIO 0
31:0	GPIO_VAL_OUT[31:0]	WO	0	Output values of GPIO 31 – GPIO 0

Table 5-27 - GPIO 00 – 31 Value Register

5.2.10.2 GPIO 32 – 39 Value Register (address offset: 0x88)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:8	Reserved	-	-	-
7:0	GPIO_VAL_IN[39:32]	RO	X	Input values of GPIO 39 – GPIO 32
7:0	GPIO_VAL_OUT[39:32]	WO	0	Output values of GPIO 39 – GPIO 32

Table 5-28 - GPIO 32 – 39 Value Register

5.2.11 GPIO Interrupt Enable Registers (address offset: 0x90 – 0x94)

When a pin has been configured as an input with interrupt capability, the GPIO Interrupt Enable Register can be used to enable interrupt generation. Each register enables interrupt generation for 32 digital pins except the last register, which only enables interrupt generation for 8 pins (32 to 39). Each bit of the register enables interrupt generation for 1 digital pin. These should be used only for pins that have been properly configured as GPIO interrupt inputs.

5.2.11.1 GPIO 00 – 31 Interrupt Enable Register (address offset: 0x90)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:0	GPIO_INT_EN[31:0]	RW	0	GPIO input 31-0 interrupt enable when set.

Table 5-29 - GPIO 00 – 31 Interrupt Enable Register

5.2.11.2 GPIO 32 – 39 Interrupt Enable Register (address offset: 0x94)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:8	Reserved	-	-	-
7:0	GPIO_INT_EN[39:32]	RW	0	GPIO input 39-32 interrupt enable when set.

Table 5-30 - GPIO 32 – 39 Interrupt Enable Register

5.2.12 Interrupt Pending Registers (address offset: 0x9C – 0xA0)

These registers hold the interrupt pending flags for the GPIO pins. Each register holds the flags for 32 digital pins except the last register, which only holds the flags for 8 pins (32 to 39). Each bit of the register holds the flag for 1 digital pin.

5.2.12.1 GPIO 00 – 31 Interrupt Pending Register (address offset: 0x9C)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:0	GPIO_INT_PEND[31:0]	RW1C	0	GPIO input 31-0 interrupt pending when set; write a 1 to clear.

Table 5-31 - GPIO 00 – 31 Interrupt Pending Register

5.2.12.2 GPIO 32 – 39 Interrupt Pending Register (address offset: 0xA0)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:8	Reserved	-	-	-
7:0	GPIO_INT_PEND[39:32]	RW1C	0	GPIO input 39-32 interrupt pending when set; write a 1 to clear.

Table 5-32 - GPIO 32 – 39 Interrupt Pending Register

5.2.13 DAC_ADC_CONF - ADC/DAC Configuration/Status Register (address offset: 0xB0)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31	Reserved	-	-	-
30	ADC_BUF_ERR	RO	0	Buffer underflow/overflow error; this is sticky. Cleared by ADC reset or ADC power down.
29	DAC1_BUF_ERR	RO	0	Buffer underflow/overflow error; this is sticky. Cleared by DAC 1 reset or DAC 1 power down.
28	DAC0_BUF_ERR	RO	0	Buffer underflow/overflow error; this is sticky. Cleared by DAC 0 reset or DAC 0 power down.
27	Reserved	-	-	-
26	ADC_IRQ_PEND	RW1C	0	ADC Interrupt Pending when set. Write a "1" to clear this bit.
25	DAC1_IRQ_PEND	RW1C	0	DAC 1 Interrupt Pending when set. Write a 1 to clear this bit.
24	DAC0_IRQ_PEND	RW1C	0	DAC 0 Interrupt Pending when set. Write a 1 to clear this bit.
23	Reserved	-	-	-
22:19	Reserved	-	-	-
18	ADC_IRQ_EN	RW	0	1 : Enable ADC interrupt
17	DAC1_IRQ_EN	RW	0	1 : Enable DAC 1 interrupt.
16	DAC0_IRQ_EN	RW	0	1 : Enable DAC 0 interrupt.
15	ADC_START	RWAC	0	Write 1 to start ADC operations. This bit will be automatically cleared if ADC_CONT = 0; otherwise when ADC_CONT is set, ADC operation runs till ADC_START is cleared.
14	Reserved	-	-	-
13	ADC_EXT_VREF	RW	0	1 : Enable Rail-Rail Reference. The voltage reference supplied externally to the chip. i.e. the voltage on ADC_VREFP.
12	ADC_CONT	RW	0	1 : Enable ADC continuous mode; When continuous mode is enabled, samples are loaded into the FIFO.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
11	ADC_PDB	RW	0	0 : power down ADC 1 : power up ADC Set to 0 if ADC is not used in the chip configuration.
10:8	ADC_CHANNEL	RW	0	If ADC is not used, set these bits to 0. 0 : No channel is selected 1 : Channel 1 selected 2 : Channel 2 selected 3 : Channel 3 selected
7	DAC1_START	RWAC	0	Write 1 to start DAC 1 operations. This bit will be automatically cleared if DAC_CONT1 = 0; otherwise if DAC_CONT1=1, DAC 1 operation runs till DAC1_START is cleared.
6	Reserved	-	-	-
5	DAC1_CONT	RW	0	1 : Enable DAC 1 continuous mode; fifo base
4	DAC1_PDB	RW	0	0 : power down DAC 1 Set to 0 if DAC 1 Is not used in the chip configuration.
3	DAC0_START	RW	0	Write 1 to start DAC 0 operations. This bit will be automatically cleared if DAC_CONT0 = 0; otherwise if DAC_CONT0=1, DAC 0 operation runs till DAC0_START is cleared.
2	Reserved	-	-	-
1	DAC0_CONT	RW	0	1 : Enable DAC 0 continuous mode; FIFO base
0	DAC0_PDB	RW	0	0 : power down DAC 0 Set to 0 if DAC 0 Is not used in the chip configuration.

Table 5-33 - DAC_ADC_CONF - ADC/DAC Configuration/Status Register

5.2.14 DAC_ADC_CNT - ADC/DAC Count Register (address offset: 0xB4)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31	Reserved	-	-	-
30:24	DAC_DIVIDER	RW	7'h63	This determines the DAC 1 and DAC 0 conversion rate. The rate is determined by Peripheral clock freq / (DAC_DIVIDER+1) The maximum conversion rate is 1MHz.
23:16	ADC_DATA_COUNT	RO	X	The amount of data available for reading in the ADC FIFO at the most recent interrupt. Note this value does not reflect the amount of data available in real time.
15:8	DAC1_DATA_COUNT	RO	X	The FIFO contains the numbers of samples for conversion. This is equal to DAC1_DATA_COUNT plus one.
7:0	DAC0_DATA_COUNT	RO	X	The FIFO contains the numbers of samples for conversion. This is equal to DAC1_DATA_COUNT plus one.

DACn_DATA_COUNT	Samples left to convert	Note
0	1	
1	2	
...	...	
127	128	full
255	0	empty

Table 5-34 - DAC_ADC_CNT - ADC/DAC Count Register

5.2.15 DAC_ADC_DATA - ADC/DAC Data Register (address offset: 0xB8)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:26	Reserved	RO	0	
25:16	DAC1_DATA	WO	0	DAC 1 Data write window for DAC 1 FIFO; If byte access is used, a write to the FIFO occurs only when the high byte is written. Hence the upper bits should be written last in this case.
15:10	Reserved	RO	0	
9:8	Reserved	RO	0	
7:0	ADC_DATA	RO	0	ADC Data read window from FIFO for ADC.
9:0	DAC0_DATA	WO	0	DAC 0 Data write window for DAC 1 FIFO; If byte access is used, a write to the FIFO occurs only when the high byte is written. Hence the upper bits should be written last in this case.

Table 5-35 - DAC_ADC_DATA - ADC/DAC Data Register

5.2.16 GLOBAL_RESET_STATUS – Global Reset and Status Register (address offset: 0xBC)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:3	-	-	-	-
2	WDG_RESET	RW1C	0	WatchDog Second Level Reset; if this bit is set it indicates the second level watchdog reset has occurred in the previous operation. Write "1" to clear this bit. Please note this bit must be cleared to enable this function again.
1	SOFT_RESET	RW	0	Soft Global Reset; write "1" to reset the system as to POR state. Reading "1" from this bit indicates a soft global reset has been performed from the previous operation. Write "0" to clear this bit. NOTE: This bit must be cleared before it can be enabled again.
0	HW_RESET	RW1C	0	External Hardware Reset; if it is set it indicates the external reset has been activated. Write "1" to clear it.

Table 5-36 - GLOBAL_RESET_STATUS - Global Reset and Status Register

6 Interrupt Controller

The interrupt controller takes in 32 interrupts, and based on the interrupt priorities assigned generates the interrupt to the FT93x together with an ISR address. Nested interrupts are allowed if enabled. By default it is disabled. Up to 16 levels of nesting is allowed which defaults to only 1 level if nesting is enabled.

When nesting is enabled, only interrupts with higher priorities can interrupt the current interrupt. Interrupts of same or lower priorities will be queued as long as the interrupt sources are not cleared.

The ISR vectors range from 0 to 31, corresponding to interrupts 0 to 31. The actual ISR address corresponds to program memory addresses 2 to 33.

The highest priority interrupt by default is interrupt input 0, and the lowest interrupt input is 31. The priorities however can be rearranged by setting the appropriate registers. Each interrupt input is assigned an interrupt priority position that can be changed. Note it's possible to assign multiple interrupts to the same priority. By default the interrupts 0 to 31 are assigned interrupt priorities 0 to 31 respectively, with a lower number indicating a higher priority.

A global interrupt mask bit is also available. Setting it to 1 will temporarily block all interrupts except the interrupt assigned as interrupt 0 which is non-maskable by this global mask.

In the FT93x, the interrupt connections from the peripherals are listed in the table below. Interrupts 23 to 31 are unused by default.

Peripheral Interrupt	Interrupt Controller Interrupt Input Number	Default Priority
Power Management	0	0 (Highest) – Non-Maskable.
Reserved	1	1
USB Dev	2	2
Reserved	3	3
SD Card	4	4
Reserved	6:5	6:5
UART 3	7	7
SPI Master	8	8
SPI Slave	9	9
Reserved	10	10
I2C Master	11	11
I2C Slave	12	12
UART 0	13	13
UART 1	14	14
UART 2	15	15
PWM	16	16
TIMERS	17	17
GPIO	18	18
RTC	19	19
ADC	20	20
DAC	21	21
SLOWCLOCK Timer	22	22
Reserved	31:23	31:23

Table 6-1 - Interrupt Assignment Table

6.1 Register Summary

The base address for the interrupt assignment registers is 0x10100. All registers and RAM locations can be accessed via Byte (8-bit), Word (16-bit) or Double-Word (32-bit) mode.

Address Offset	Register	Default Value	Reference
0x00	IRQ00-03 Assignment Register	0x03020100	Section 6.2.1
0x04	IRQ04-07 Assignment Register	0x07060504	Section 6.2.2
0x08	IRQ08-11 Assignment Register	0x0B0A0908	Section 6.2.3
0x0C	IRQ12-15 Assignment Register	0x0F0E0D0C	Section 6.2.4
0x10	IRQ16-19 Assignment Register	0x13121110	Section 6.2.5
0x14	IRQ20-23 Assignment Register	0x17161514	Section 6.2.6
0x18	IRQ24-27 Assignment Register	0x1B1A1918	Section 6.2.7
0x1C	IRQ28-31 Assignment Register	0x1F1E1D1C	Section 6.2.8
0x20	IRQ Control Register	0x80000000	Section 6.2.9

Table 6-2 - Overview of Interrupt Control Registers

6.2 Register Details

6.2.1 IRQ00-03 Assignment Register (address offset: 0x00)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:29	Reserved	-	-	-
28:24	PR03ASSIGN	RW	5'h03	Priority assignment for interrupt 3
23:21	Reserved	-	-	-
20:16	PR02ASSIGN	RW	5'h02	Priority assignment for interrupt 2
15:13	Reserved	-	-	-
12:8	PR01ASSIGN	RW	5'h01	Priority assignment for interrupt 1
7:5	Reserved	-	-	-
4:0	PR00ASSIGN	RW	5'h00	Priority assignment for interrupt 0

Table 6-3 - IRQ00-03 Assignment Register

6.2.2 IRQ04-07 Assignment Register (address offset: 0x04)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:29	Reserved	-	-	-
28:24	PR07ASSIGN	RW	5'h07	Priority assignment for interrupt 7
23:21	Reserved	-	-	-
20:16	PR06ASSIGN	RW	5'h06	Priority assignment for interrupt 6
15:13	Reserved	-	-	-
12:8	PR05ASSIGN	RW	5'h05	Priority assignment for interrupt 5
7:5	Reserved	-	-	-
4:0	PR04ASSIGN	RW	5'h04	Priority assignment for interrupt 4

Table 6-4 - IRQ04-07 Assignment Register

6.2.3 IRQ08-11 Assignment Register (address offset: 0x08)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:29	Reserved	-	-	-
28:24	PR11ASSIGN	RW	5'h0B	Priority assignment for interrupt 11
23:21	Reserved	-	-	-
20:16	PR10ASSIGN	RW	5'h0A	Priority assignment for interrupt 10
15:13	Reserved	-	-	-
12:8	PR09ASSIGN	RW	5'h09	Priority assignment for interrupt 9
7:5	Reserved	-	-	-
4:0	PR08ASSIGN	RW	5'h08	Priority assignment for interrupt 8

Table 6-5 - IRQ08-11 Assignment Register

6.2.4 IRQ12-15 Assignment Register (address offset: 0x0C)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:29	Reserved	-	-	-
28:24	PR15ASSIGN	RW	5'h0F	Priority assignment for interrupt 15
23:21	Reserved	-	-	-
20:16	PR14ASSIGN	RW	5'h0E	Priority assignment for interrupt 14
15:13	Reserved	-	-	-
12:8	PR13ASSIGN	RW	5'h0D	Priority assignment for interrupt 13
7:5	Reserved	-	-	-
4:0	PR12ASSIGN	RW	5'h0C	Priority assignment for interrupt 12

Table 6-6 - IRQ12-15 Assignment Register

6.2.5 IRQ16-19 Assignment Register (address offset: 0x10)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:29	Reserved	-	-	-
28:24	PR19ASSIGN	RW	5'h13	Priority assignment for interrupt 19
23:21	Reserved	-	-	-
20:16	PR18ASSIGN	RW	5'h12	Priority assignment for interrupt 18
15:13	Reserved	-	-	-
12:8	PR17ASSIGN	RW	5'h11	Priority assignment for interrupt 17
7:5	Reserved	-	-	-
4:0	PR16ASSIGN	RW	5'h10	Priority assignment for interrupt 16

Table 6-7 - IRQ16-19 Assignment Register

6.2.6 IRQ20-23 Assignment Register (address offset: 0x14)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:29	Reserved	-	-	-
28:24	PR23ASSIGN	RW	5'h17	Priority assignment for interrupt 23
23:21	Reserved	-	-	-
20:16	PR22ASSIGN	RW	5'h16	Priority assignment for interrupt 22
15:13	Reserved	-	-	-
12:8	PR21ASSIGN	RW	5'h15	Priority assignment for interrupt 21
7:5	Reserved	-	-	-
4:0	PR20ASSIGN	RW	5'h14	Priority assignment for interrupt 20

Table 6-8 - IRQ20-23 Assignment Register

6.2.7 IRQ24-27 Assignment Register (address offset: 0x18)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:29	Reserved	-	-	-
28:24	PR27ASSIGN	RW	5'h1B	Priority assignment for interrupt 27
23:21	Reserved	-	-	-
20:16	PR26ASSIGN	RW	5'h1A	Priority assignment for interrupt 26
15:13	Reserved	-	-	-
12:8	PR25ASSIGN	RW	5'h19	Priority assignment for interrupt 25
7:5	Reserved	-	-	-
4:0	PR24ASSIGN	RW	5'h18	Priority assignment for interrupt 24

Table 6-9 - IRQ24-27 Assignment Register

6.2.8 IRQ28-31 Assignment Register (address offset: 0x1C)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:29	Reserved	-	-	-
28:24	PR31ASSIGN	RW	5'h1F	Priority assignment for interrupt 31
23:21	Reserved	-	-	-
20:16	PR30ASSIGN	RW	5'h1E	Priority assignment for interrupt 30
15:13	Reserved	-	-	-
12:8	PR29ASSIGN	RW	5'h1D	Priority assignment for interrupt 29
7:5	Reserved	-	-	-
4:0	PR28ASSIGN	RW	5'h1C	Priority assignment for interrupt 28

Table 6-10 - IRQ28-31 Assignment Register

6.2.9 IRQ Control Register (address offset: 0x20)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31	Global Interrupt Mask	RW	1	Set to 1 to mask all interrupts.
30:8	Reserved	-	-	-
7	Nested Interrupt	RW	0	Set to 1 to enable nested interrupts
6:4	Reserved	-	-	-
3:0	Nested Depth	RW	4'h00	Maximum number of nested interrupts permitted (Nested Depth + 1); minimum 1 level, and maximum 16 levels.

Table 6-11 - IRQ Control Register

7 USB Device

This is a USB device controller fully compliant with the USB 2.0 specification. It supports a control end point - End Point 0 (EP0) - and up to 7 other End Points (EP1-7).

The EP0 control endpoint buffer size ranges from 8 to 64 bytes, configurable via software. EP1-7 support optional double buffering. The number of end points supported can be set by software, as well as their individual direction, type (Interrupt, Bulk, and Isochronous) and buffer size (8-1024 bytes). The total buffer size to be shared by all end points is 8kB.

7.1 Register Summary

Listed below are the registers with their offset from the base address (0x10200). All registers can only be accessed via Byte mode, except all endpoints' Data Buffer Registers are accessed via Double-Word, Word and Byte modes.

Address Offset	Register	Default Value	Reference
	Initialization Registers		
0x18	DC_ADDRESS_ENABLE – Address Register	0x00	Section 7.2.1
0x10	DC_MODE – Mode Register	0x00	Section 7.2.2
0x08	DC_INT_ENABLE – Interrupt Enable Register	0x00	Section 7.2.3
0x0C	DC_EP_INT_ENABLE – Endpoints Interrupt Enable Register	0x00	Section 7.2.4
	Control Endpoint Data Flow Registers		
0x1C	DC_EP0_CONTROL – Endpoint 0 Control Register	0x00	Section 7.3.1
0x20	DC_EP0_STATUS – Endpoint 0 Status Register	0x00	Section 7.3.2
0x24	DC_EP0_BUFFER_LENGTH – Endpoint 0 Buffer Length Register	0x00	Section 7.3.3
0x28	DC_EP0_BUFFER – Endpoint 0 Buffer Register	0x00	Section 7.3.4
	Other Endpoints Data Flow Registers		
0x2C	DC_EP1_CONTROL – Endpoint 1 Control Register	0x00	Section 7.4.1
0x30	DC_EP1_STATUS – Endpoint 1 Status Register	0x00	Section 7.4.2
0x34	DC_EP1_BUFFER_LENGTH_LSB – Endpoint 1 Buffer Length LSB Register	0x00	Section 7.4.3
0x35	DC_EP1_BUFFER_LENGTH_MSB – Endpoint 1 Buffer Length MSB Register	0x00	Section 7.4.4
0x38	DC_EP1_BUFFER – Endpoint 1 Buffer Register	0x00	Section 7.4.5
0x3C	DC_EP2_CONTROL – Endpoint 2 Control Register	0x00	Section 7.4.1
0x40	DC_EP2_STATUS – Endpoint 2 Status Register	0x00	Section 7.4.2
0x44	DC_EP2_BUFFER_LENGTH_LSB – Endpoint 2 Buffer Length LSB Register	0x00	Section 7.4.3
0x45	DC_EP2_BUFFER_LENGTH_MSB – Endpoint 2 Buffer Length MSB Register	0x00	Section 7.4.4
0x48	DC_EP2_BUFFER – Endpoint 2 Buffer Register	0x00	Section 7.4.5

Address Offset	Register	Default Value	Reference
0x4C	DC_EP3_CONTROL – Endpoint 3 Control Register	0x00	Section 7.4.1
0x50	DC_EP3_STATUS – Endpoint 3 Status Register	0x00	Section 7.4.2
0x54	DC_EP3_BUFFER_LENGTH_LSB – Endpoint 3 Buffer Length LSB Register	0x00	Section 7.4.3
0x55	DC_EP3_BUFFER_LENGTH_MSB – Endpoint 3 Buffer Length MSB Register	0x00	Section 7.4.4
0x58	DC_EP3_BUFFER – Endpoint 3 Buffer Register	0x00	Section 7.4.5
0x5C	DC_EP4_CONTROL – Endpoint 4 Control Register	0x00	Section 7.4.1
0x60	DC_EP4_STATUS – Endpoint 4 Status Register	0x00	Section 7.4.2
0x64	DC_EP4_BUFFER_LENGTH_LSB – Endpoint 4 Buffer Length LSB Register	0x00	Section 7.4.3
0x65	DC_EP4_BUFFER_LENGTH_MSB – Endpoint 4 Buffer Length MSB Register	0x00	Section 7.4.4
0x68	DC_EP4_BUFFER – Endpoint 4 Buffer Register	0x00	Section 7.4.5
0x6C	DC_EP5_CONTROL – Endpoint 5 Control Register	0x00	Section 7.4.1
0x70	DC_EP5_STATUS – Endpoint 5 Status Register	0x00	Section 7.4.2
0x74	DC_EP5_BUFFER_LENGTH_LSB – Endpoint 5 Buffer Length LSB Register	0x00	Section 7.4.3
0x75	DC_EP5_BUFFER_LENGTH_MSB – Endpoint 5 Buffer Length MSB Register	0x00	Section 7.4.4
0x78	DC_EP5_BUFFER – Endpoint 5 Buffer Register	0x00	Section 7.4.5
0x7C	DC_EP6_CONTROL – Endpoint 6 Control Register	0x00	Section 7.4.1
0x80	DC_EP6_STATUS – Endpoint 6 Status Register	0x00	Section 7.4.2
0x84	DC_EP6_BUFFER_LENGTH_LSB – Endpoint 6 Buffer Length LSB Register	0x00	Section 7.4.3
0x85	DC_EP6_BUFFER_LENGTH_MSB – Endpoint 6 Buffer Length MSB Register	0x00	Section 7.4.4
0x88	DC_EP6_BUFFER – Endpoint 6 Buffer Register	0x00	Section 7.4.5
0x8C	DC_EP7_CONTROL – Endpoint 7 Control Register	0x00	Section 7.4.1
0x90	DC_EP7_STATUS – Endpoint 7 Status Register	0x00	Section 7.4.2
0x94	DC_EP7_BUFFER_LENGTH_LSB – Endpoint 7 Buffer Length LSB Register	0x00	Section 7.4.3
0x95	DC_EP7_BUFFER_LENGTH_MSB – Endpoint 7 Buffer Length MSB Register	0x00	Section 7.4.4
0x98	DC_EP7_BUFFER – Endpoint 7 Buffer Register	0x00	Section 7.4.5
	General Registers		
0x00	DC_INT_STATUS – Interrupt Status Register	0x00	Section 7.5.1
0x04	DC_EP_INT_STATUS – Endpoints Interrupt Status Register	0x00	Section 7.5.2
0x14	DC_FRAME_NUMBER_LSB – Frame Number LSB Register	0x00	Section 7.5.3

Address Offset	Register	Default Value	Reference
0x15	DC_FRAME_NUMBER_MSB – Frame Number MSB Register	0x00	Section 7.5.4

Table 7-1 - Overview of USB Device Registers

7.2 Initialization Registers

7.2.1 DC_ADDRESS_ENABLE – Address Register (address offset: 0x18)

This register sets the USB assigned address sent from the USB Host and enables the USB Device. In response to the standard USB request SET_ADDRESS, the firmware must write the peripheral address to this register.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	ENABLE	RO	1'b0	Hardware sets this to 1 when software writes a new address to this register. It is cleared by hardware at the end of the current transfer when the new address will take effect.
6:0	ADDR	RW	7'h00	Function Address

Table 7-2 - DC_ADDRESS_ENABLE – Address Register

7.2.2 DC_MODE – Mode Register (address offset: 0x10)

This register allows the firmware to select the different test modes and enables the USB Device function.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	TST_MODE_ENABLE	RW	1'b0	Test Mode Enable. Setting this to 1 to enter the test mode. It can only be cleared by hardware reset.
6:5	TST_MODE_SELECT	RW	2'h0	Test Mode select (writeable only if MODE_ENABLE is 0) 2'h0: SE0_NAK 2'h1: J 2'h2: K 2'h3: Packet
4:2	Reserved	-	-	-
1	FS_ONLY	RW	1'b0	Setting this to 1 disables HS detection handshake
0	USB_DEV_EN	RW	1'b0	USB function enables. Setting this to 1 enables the USB Device

Table 7-3 - DC_MODE – Mode Register

7.2.3 DC_INT_ENABLE – Interrupt Enable Register (address offset: 0x08)

This register enables the different interrupt sources by writing a 1 to the corresponding bit.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	PHY_IE	RW	1'b0	PHY receive error interrupt enable
6	PID_IE	RW	1'b0	Package ID error interrupt enable
5	CRC16_IE	RW	1'b0	CRC16 error interrupt enable
4	CRC5_IE	RW	1'b0	CRC5 error interrupt enable
3	RESM_IE	RW	1'b0	Resume interrupt enable
2	SUS_IE	RW	1'b0	Suspend interrupt enable
1	RST_IE	RW	1'b0	Reset interrupt enable
0	SOF_IE	RW	1'b0	Start of Frame interrupt enable

Table 7-4 - DC_INT_ENABLE – Interrupt Enable Register

7.2.4 DC_EP_INT_ENABLE – Endpoints Interrupt Enable Register (address offset: 0x0C)

This register enables the different interrupt sources based on the specific endpoints by writing 1 to the corresponding bit.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	EP7_IE	RW	1'b0	Endpoint 7 interrupt enable
6	EP6_IE	RW	1'b0	Endpoint 6 interrupt enable
5	EP5_IE	RW	1'b0	Endpoint 5 interrupt enable
4	EP4_IE	RW	1'b0	Endpoint 4 interrupt enable
3	EP3_IE	RW	1'b0	Endpoint 3 interrupt enable
2	EP2_IE	RW	1'b0	Endpoint 2 interrupt enable
1	EP1_IE	RW	1'b0	Endpoint 1 interrupt enable
0	EP0_IE	RW	1'b0	Endpoint 0 interrupt enable

Table 7-5 - DC_EP_INT_ENABLE – Endpoints Interrupt Enable Register

7.3 Control Endpoint Data flow Registers

Control Endpoint Data flow registers are used for configuring the control endpoint and handle the sending and receiving data to the control endpoint.

7.3.1 DC_EP0_CONTROL – Endpoint 0 Control Register (address offset: 0x1C)

This register configures the maximum packet size of the control endpoint 0. It is also used to stall the control endpoint.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:3	Reserved	-	-	-
2:1	EP_SIZE	RW	2'h0	Endpoint Maximum packet size 2'h0: 8 bytes 2'h1: 16 bytes 2'h2: 32 bytes 2'h3: 64 bytes
0	STALL	RW	1'b0	Send STALL Software writes 1 to send a STALL handshake in response to an IN token. Software writes 0 to terminate the STALL signalling.

Table 7-6 - DC_EP0_CONTROL – Endpoint 0 Control Register

7.3.2 DC_EP0_STATUS – Endpoint 0 Status Register (address offset: 0x20)

This register is used by the hardware to report the status of the control endpoint 0. Software writes 1 to the corresponding register bit to clear the status.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:5	Reserved	-	-	-
4	DATA_END	RW1S	1'b0	Data End. Software should update this bit to 1 when writing: • 1 to IN_PKT_RDY for last outgoing data packet • 1 to IN_PKT_RDY for a zero-length data

				packet • 1 to OUT_PKT_RDY after servicing the last incoming data packet
3	STALL	RW1C	1'b0	Sent STALL. Hardware sets this to 1 when the STALL handshake has been transmitted. Software writes 1 to clear it.
2	SETUP	RW1C	1'b0	SETUP token received. Hardware sets this to 1 and interrupts when the SETUP token has been received. Software writes 1 to clear it.
1	IN_PKT_RDY	RW1S	1'b0	IN packet ready. Software should write 1 to it after loading a data packet into the endpoint 0 IN FIFO. Hardware clears it and generates an interrupt when the data packet has been successfully transmitted.
0	OUT_PKT_RDY	RW1C	1'b0	OUT packet ready. Hardware sets this bit to 1 and generates an interrupt when a data packet has been received. Software writes 1 to clear it after unloading the data packet from the endpoint 0 OUT FIFO.

Table 7-7 - DC_EP0_STATUS – Endpoint 0 Status Register

7.3.3 DC_EP0_BUFFER_LENGTH – Endpoint 0 Buffer Length Register (address offset: 0x24)

This register is used by the hardware to report the length of the packet received in the endpoint 0 OUT buffer.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	Reserved	-	-	-
6:0	BUF_LEN	RO	7'h00	Indicates the number of data bytes received. Valid only if OUT_PKT_RDY is 1.

Table 7-8 - DC_EP0_BUFFER_LENGTH – Endpoint 0 Buffer Length Register

7.3.4 DC_EP0_BUFFER – Endpoint 0 Buffer Register (address offset: 0x28)

This register is the used to access the endpoint 0 FIFO.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	Data	R/W	8'h00	Endpoint 0 FIFO window register. A read unloads one data byte from the Endpoint 0 OUT FIFO. A write loads one data byte into the Endpoint 0 IN FIFO.

Table 7-9 - DC_EP0_BUFFER – Endpoint 0 Buffer Register

7.4 Other Endpoint Data Flow Registers

This is a set of register used to access the other endpoints from endpoint 1 to endpoint 7. The register definitions are the same for the registers from endpoint 1 to endpoint 7 but they are located at different offset addresses.

7.4.1 DC_EP(x)_CONTROL – Endpoint Control Registers (address offset: 0x2C/0x3C/0x4C/0x5C/0x6C/0x7C/0x8C)

The different endpoints are configured by writing to the corresponding endpoint control register selected based on the corresponding offset address. This register is used to configure the endpoint type, direction, maximum packet size and double buffering. It is also used to stall the corresponding data endpoint.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	DBL_BUF	RW	1'b0	Endpoint double buffering Enable. 0: double buffering disabled 1: double buffering enabled
6:4	EP_SIZE	RW	3'h0	Endpoint Maximum packet size. This parameter has to be fixed during the Set Configuration request. 0x0: 8 bytes 0x1: 16 bytes 0x2: 32 bytes 0x3: 64 bytes 0x4: 128 bytes 0x5: 256 bytes 0x6: 512 bytes 0x7: 1024 bytes
3	STALL	RW	1'b0	Send STALL. Valid only when the Endpoint is in bulk or interrupt mode. Software should write a 1 to this bit to send a STALL handshake in response to IN token, PING token and data phase of OUT transaction. Software should write a 0 to this bit to terminate the STALL signalling.
2:1	EP_MODE	RW	2'h0	Endpoint Mode. This parameter has to be fixed during the Set Configuration request. 0x0: EP disabled 0x1: EP configured for bulk transfers 0x2: EP configured for interrupt transfers 0x3: EP configured for isochronous transfers
0	EP_DIR	RW	1'b0	Endpoint Direction. This parameter has to be fixed during the Set Configuration request. 0x0: EP direction selected as OUT 0x1: EP direction selected as IN

Table 7-10 - DC_EP(x)_CONTROL – Endpoint Control Registers

7.4.2 DC_EP(x)_STATUS – Endpoint Status Registers (address offset: 0x30/0x40/0x50/0x60/0x70/0x80/0x90)

The different endpoint statuses are read by accessing the corresponding status register. The hardware reports the endpoint status in this register. Write a 1 to the corresponding register bit to clear the bit.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	CLR_TOGGLE	RW1S	1'b0	Clear data toggle. Software can write a 1 to this bit to reset the Endpoint data toggle to 0. This bit is always read as 0.
6	FIFO_FLUSH	RW1S	1'b0	FIFO Flush. Valid only when the EP direction is IN. Writing 1 to this bit flushes the next packet to be transmitted from the Endpoint IN FIFO. The FIFO pointer is reset and the IN_PKT_RDY bit is cleared. Hardware resets the FLUSH bit to 0 when the FIFO flush is complete.
5	DATA_ERR	RW1C	1'b0	Data error. Valid only when the Endpoint is

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
				in isochronous mode and the direction is OUT. This flag is set to 1 by hardware if a received packet has a CRC-16 error. It is automatically cleared when software clears the OUT_PKT_RDY bit.
4	STALL	RW1C	1'b0	Sent STALL. Valid only when the Endpoint is in bulk or interrupt mode. Hardware sets this bit to 1 when the STALL handshake is transmitted. Software can clear this bit by writing a 1 to this bit.
3	UNDER_RUN	RW1C	1'b0	Data underrun. Valid only when the Endpoint direction is IN. Its function is dependent upon the Endpoint mode: Isochronous: Hardware sets this to 1 when a zero-length packet is sent in response to an IN token while IN_PKT_RDY is 0. Bulk/Interrupt: Hardware sets this to 1 when a NAK packet is sent in response to an IN token while IN_PKT_RDY is 0. Software can clear this bit by writing a 1 to this bit.
2	OVER_RUN	RW1C	1'b0	Data overrun. Valid only when the Endpoint is in isochronous mode and the direction is OUT. Hardware sets this bit to 1 if a received packet cannot be loaded into the Endpoint FIFO. Software can clear this bit by writing a 1 to this bit.
1	IN_PKT_RDY	RW1S	1'b0	IN packet ready. Valid only when the Endpoint direction is IN. Software should write a 1 to this bit after loading a data packet into the Endpoint IN FIFO. Hardware clears this bit and generates an interrupt when the data packet has been successfully transmitted
0	OUT_PKT_RDY	RW1C	1'b0	OUT packet ready. Valid only when the Endpoint direction is OUT. Hardware sets this bit to 1 and generates an interrupt when a data packet has been received. Software writes a 1 to clear it after unloading the data packet from the Endpoint OUT FIFO.

Table 7-11 - DC_EP(x)_STATUS – Endpoint Status Registers

7.4.3 DC_EP(x)_BUFFER_LENGTH_LSB – Endpoint Buffer Length LSB Registers (address offset: 0x34/0x44/0x54/0x64/0x74/0x84/0x94)

The different endpoint buffer length is read by accessing the corresponding buffer length register. This register reports the LSB of the OUT buffer length.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	BUF_LEN_LSB	RO	8'h00	Indicates the low byte of the number of received data bytes in the Endpoint FIFO. Valid only if OUT_PKT_RDY is 1.

Table 7-12 - DC_EP(x)_BUFFER_LENGTH_LSB – Endpoint Buffer Length LSB Registers

7.4.4 DC_EP(x)_BUFFER_LENGTH_MSB – Endpoint Buffer Length MSB Registers (address offset: 0x35/0x45/0x55/0x65/0x75/0x85/0x95)

The different endpoint buffer length is read by accessing the corresponding buffer length register. This register reports the MSB of the OUT buffer length.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:3	Reserved	RO	5'h00	-
2:0	BUF_LEN_MSB	RO	3'h0	Indicates the high 3-bit of the number of received data bytes in the Endpoint FIFO. Valid only if OUT_PKT_RDY is 1.

Table 7-13 - DC_EP(x)_BUFFER_LENGTH_MSB – Endpoint Buffer Length MSB Registers

7.4.5 DC_EP(x)_BUFFER – Endpoint Buffer Registers (address offset: 0x38/0x48/0x58/0x68/0x78/0x88/0x98)

The different endpoint buffer is accessed by accessing the corresponding buffer register.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	buffer	RW	8'h00	Endpoint FIFO window register. A read unloads one data byte from the Endpoint OUT FIFO. A write loads one data byte into the Endpoint IN FIFO.

Table 7-14 - DC_EP(x)_BUFFER – Endpoint Buffer Registers

7.5 General Registers

7.5.1 DC_INT_STATUS – Interrupt Status Register (address offset: 0x00)

This register indicates that the hardware condition of the corresponding interrupt has occurred. Write a 1 to clear the corresponding bit.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	PHY	RW1C	1'b0	PHY receive error interrupt status
6	PID	RW1C	1'b0	Package ID error interrupt status
5	CRC16	RW1C	1'b0	CRC16 error interrupt status
4	CRC5	RW1C	1'b0	CRC5 error interrupt status
3	RESM	RW1C	1'b0	Resume interrupt status
2	SUS	RW1C	1'b0	Suspend interrupt status
1	RST	RW1C	1'b0	Reset interrupt status
0	SOF	RW1C	1'b0	Start of Frame interrupt status

Table 7-15 - DC_INT_STATUS – Interrupt Status Register

7.5.2 DC_EP_INT_STATUS – Endpoints Interrupt Status Register (address offset: 0x04)

This register indicates the corresponding endpoint hardware condition has occurred. Write a 1 to clear the corresponding bit.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	EP7	RW1C	1'b0	Endpoint 7 interrupt status
6	EP6	RW1C	1'b0	Endpoint 6 interrupt status
5	EP5	RW1C	1'b0	Endpoint 5 interrupt status
4	EP4	RW1C	1'b0	Endpoint 4 interrupt status
3	EP3	RW1C	1'b0	Endpoint 3 interrupt status
2	EP2	RW1C	1'b0	Endpoint 2 interrupt status

1	EP1	RW1C	1'b0	Endpoint 1 interrupt status
0	EP0	RW1C	1'b0	Endpoint 0 interrupt status

Table 7-16 - DC_EP_INT_STATUS – Endpoints Interrupt Status Register

7.5.3 DC_FRAME_NUMBER_LSB – Frame Number LSB Register (address offset: 0x14)

This register has the LSB of the last successfully received SOF.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	FRAME_LSB	RO	8'h00	Frame Number for last received SOF, Least significant byte

Table 7-17 - DC_FRAME_NUMBER_LSB – Frame Number LSB Register

7.5.4 DC_FRAME_NUMBER_MSB – Frame Number MSB Register (address offset: 0x15)

This register has the MSB of the last successfully received SOF.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:3	Reserved	RO	5'h00	-
2:0	FRAME_MSB	RO	3'h0	Frame Number for last received SOF, Most significant byte

Table 7-18 - DC_FRAME_NUMBER_MSB – Frame Number MSB Register

8 SD Host

The device supports an SD Host with the following features.

- Supports PIO data transfers
- Supports configurable SD bus modes: 4-bit mode and 8-bit mode
- Supports configurable 8-word/16-word register for data FIFO
- Supports configurable 1K/2K/4K SRAM for data FIFO
- Supports configurable 1-bit/4-bit SD card bus and 1-bit/4-bit/8-bit MMC card bus
- Configurable CPRM function for security
- Built-in generation and check for 7-bit and 16-bit CRC data
- Card detection (Insertion/Removal)
- Supports Read Wait mechanism for SDIO function
- Supports Suspend/Resume mechanism for SDIO function

8.1 Register Summary

Listed below are the registers with their offset from the base address (0x10600). All registers can only be accessed via Double-Word (32-bit) mode. Note that some registers are not 32-bit long. In that case, several registers are combined into one 32-bit location. If one such register is accessed, all other registers in the same 32-bit location will also be affected. The user needs to take care not to modify the content of the other registers.

Address Offset	Register	Default Value	Reference
0x00	SDH_AUTO_CMD23_ARG2 – Auto CMD23 Argument 2 Register	0x00000000	Section 12.2.1
0x04	SDH_BLK_SIZE – Block Size Register	0x0000	Section 12.2.2
0x06	SDH_BLK_COUNT – Block Count Register	0x0000	Section 12.2.3
0x08	SDH_ARG_1 – Argument 1 Register	0x00000000	Section 12.2.4
0x0C	SDH_TNSFER_MODE – Transfer Mode Register	0x0000	Section 12.2.5
0x0E	SDH_CMD – Command Register	0x0000	Section 12.2.6
0x10 - 0x1C	SDH_RESPONSE – Response Register	0x00000000	Section 12.2.7
0x20	SDH_BUF_DATA – Buffer Data Port Register	0x00000000	Section 12.2.8
0x24	SDH_PRESENT_STATE – Present State Register	0x00000000	Section 12.2.9
0x28	SDH_HST_CNTL_1 – Host Control 1 Register	0x00	Section 12.2.10
0x29	SDH_PWR_CNTL – Power Control Register	0x00	Section 12.2.11
0x2A	SDH_BLK_GAP_CNTL – Block Gap Control Register	0x0000	Section 12.2.12
0x2C	SDH_CLK_GAP_CNTL – Clock Control Register	0x0000	Section 12.2.13

0x2E	SDH_TIMEOUT_CNTL – Timeout Control Register	0x00	Section 12.2.14
0x2F	SDH_SW_RST – Software Reset Register	0x00	Section 12.2.15
0x30	SDH_NRML_INT_STATUS – Normal Interrupt Status Register	0x0000	Section 12.2.16
0x32	SDH_ERR_INT_STATUS – Error Interrupt Status Register	0x0000	Section 12.2.17
0x34	SDH_NRML_INT_ENABLE – Normal Interrupt Status Enable Register	0x0000	Section 12.2.18
0x36	SDH_ERR_INT_ENABLE – Error Interrupt Status Enable Register	0x0000	Section 12.2.19
0x38	SDH_NRML_INT_SGNL_ENABLE – Normal Interrupt Signal Enable Register	0x0000	Section 12.2.20
0x3A	SDH_ERR_INT_SGNL_ENABLE – Error Interrupt Signal Enable Register	0x0000	Section 12.2.21
0x3C	SDH_AUTO_CMD12_ERR_STATUS – Auto CMD12 Error Status Register	0x0000	Section 12.2.22
0x3E	SDH_HOST_CNTL_2 – Host Control 2 Register	0x0000	Section 12.2.23
0x40	SDH_CAP_1 – Capabilities Register 1	0x016A0080	Section 12.2.24
0x44	SDH_CAP_2 – Capabilities Register 2	0x00000F75	Section 12.2.25
0x48	SDH_RSRV_1 – Reserved 1 Register	0x00000000	Section 12.2.26
0x4C	SDH_RSRV_2 – Reserved 2 Register	0x00000000	Section 12.2.27
0x50	SDH_FORCE_EVT_CMD_ERR_STATUS – Force Event for Auto CMD Error Status Register	0x0000	Section 12.2.28
0x52	SDH_FORCE_EVT_ERR_INT_STATUS – Force Event for Error Interrupt Status Register	0x0000	Section 12.2.29
0x54	SDH_RSRV_3 – Reserved 3 Register	0x00000000	Section 12.2.30
0x58	SDH_RSRV_4 – Reserved 4 Register	0x00000000	Section 12.2.31
0x60	SDH_PRST_INIT – Preset value for initialization Register	0x0000	Section 12.2.32
0x62	SDH_PRST_DFLT_SPD – Preset value for default speed Register	0x0000	Section 12.2.33
0x64	SDH_PRST_HIGH_SPD – Preset value for the high speed Register	0x0000	Section 12.2.34
0x66	SDH_PRST_SDR12 – Preset value for SDR12 Register	0x0000	Section 12.2.35
0x68	SDH_PRST_SDR25 – Preset value for SDR25 Register	0x0000	Section 12.2.36
0x6A	SDH_PRST_SDR50 – Preset value for SDR50 Register	0x0000	Section 12.2.37
0x6C	SDH_PRST_SDR104 – Preset value for SDR104 Register	0x0000	Section 12.2.38
0x6E	SDH_PRST_DDR50 – Preset value for DDR50 Register	0x0000	Section 12.2.39
0xFC	SDH_RSRV_5 – Reserved 5 Register	0x0000	Section 12.2.40
0xFE	SDH_HC_VER – Host Controller Version Register	0x0002	Section 12.2.41
0x100	SDH_VNDR_0 – Vendor defined 0 Register	0x00000001	Section 12.2.42
0x104	SDH_VNDR_1 – Vendor defined 1 Register	0x00000000	Section 12.2.43
0x108	SDH_VNDR_2 – Vendor defined 2 Register	0x00000000	Section 12.2.44
0x10C	SDH_VNDR_3 – Vendor defined 3 Register	0x1FXXXXXX	Section 12.2.45

0x110	SDH_VNDR_4 – Vendor defined 4 Register	0x00000000	Section 12.2.46
0x114	SDH_VNDR_5 – Vendor defined 5 Register	0x00000000	Section 12.2.47
0x118	SDH_VNDR_6 – Vendor defined 6 Register	0x00000001	Section 12.2.48
0x11C	SDH_VNDR_7 – Vendor defined 7 Register	0x00000000	Section 12.2.49
0x120	SDH_VNDR_8 – Vendor defined 8 Register	0x00000000	Section 12.2.50
0x124	SDH_VNDR_9 – Vendor defined 9 Register	0x00000000	Section 12.2.51
0x128	SDH_RSRV_6 – Reserved 6 Register	0x00000000	Section 12.2.52
0x178	SDH_HW_ATTR – Hardware Attributes Register	0x00000150	Section 12.2.53
0x180	SDH_CPR_MOD_CNTL – Cipher Mode Control Register	0x00000000	Section 12.2.54
0x184	SDH_CPR_MOD_STATUS – Cipher Mode Status Register	0x00000000	Section 12.2.55
0x188	SDH_CPR_MOD_STATUS_EN – Cipher Mode Status Enable Register	0x0000	Section 12.2.56
0x18A	SDH_CPR_MOD_SIG_EN – Cipher Mode Signal Enable Register	0x0000	Section 12.2.57
0x18C	SDH_IN_DATA_LSB –Input Data LSB Register	0x00000000	Section 12.2.58
0x190	SDH_IN_DATA_MSB –Input Data MSB Register	0x00000000	Section 12.2.59
0x194	SDH_IN_KEY_LSB – Input Key LSB Register	0x00000000	Section 12.2.60
0x198	SDH_IN_KEY_MSB – Input Key MSB Register	0x00000000	Section 12.2.61
0x19C	SDH_OUT_DATA_LSB – Output Data LSB Register	0x00000000	Section 12.2.62
0x1A0	SDH_OUT_DATA_MSB – Output Data MSB Register	0x00000000	Section 12.2.63
0x1A4	SDH_SCRT_CONS_DATA – Secret Constant Table Data Port	0x00000000	Section 12.2.64

Table 8-1 - Overview of SD Host Registers

8.2 Register Details

8.2.1 SDH_AUTO_CMD23_ARG2 – Auto CMD23 Argument 2 Register (address offset: 0x00)

This register sets a 32-bit block count to the argument of CMD23 while executing Auto CMD23. The available block count will be limited by BLK_CNT. In this case, 65535 blocks is the maximum value.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:0	ARG_2	RW	32'h0000_0000	Auto CMD23 argument 2

Table 8-2 - 11.2.1 SDH_AUTO_CMD23_ARG2 – Auto CMD23 Argument 2 Register

8.2.2 SDH_BLK_SIZE – Block Size Register (address offset: 0x04)

This register is used to configure the number of bytes in a data block.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
15:12	Reserved	-	-	-
11:0	BLK_SIZE	RW	12'h000	This register specifies the block size of data transfers for CMD17/18/24/25/53 and can be set with values ranging from 1 up to the maximum buffer size.

Table 8-3 - 11.2.2 SDH_BLK_SIZE – Block Size Register

8.2.3 SDH_BLK_COUNT – Block Count Register (address offset: 0x06)

The block count register is set when the BLK_CNT_EN bit is set to 1. This register is used only for the multi-block transfers. The host controller will decrease the counting number during the data transfer and stop counting when it counts down to zero. When a suspend command is completed in the SDIO transfer, the remaining block counts can be determined by reading this register. Before issuing a resume command to start a re-transfer, the host driver should restore the block counts that are previously saved.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:16	BLK_CNT	RW	16'h000	Block count of the current transfer. Valid values are from 1 to 65535 blocks 0000: stop counting

Table 8-4 - 11.2.3 SDH_BLK_COUNT – Block Count Register

8.2.4 SDH_ARG_1 – Argument 1 Register (address offset: 0x08)

This register is assigned to bits[39:8] of the command field.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:0	ARG1	RW	32'h0000_0000	Command argument

Table 8-5 - 11.2.4 SDH_ARG_1 – Argument 1 Register

8.2.5 SDH_TNSFER_MODE – Transfer Mode Register (address offset: 0x0C)

The host driver should set this register before issuing the data transfer command or resume command. When in the SDIO transfer, the values of this register should be preserved after the suspend command and should be restored before the resume command.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
15:6	Reserved	-	-	-
5	MULTI_BLK	RW	1'b0	1: Multiple blocks selection 0: Single block selection
4	TRAN_DIR_SEL	RW	1'b0	1: Read from the card to host 0: Write from the host to card
3:2	AUTO_CMD_EN	RW	2'h0	Auto CMD enable There are two methods to stop the read and write operations of multiple blocks: 01: Auto CMD12 Enable When this field is set to 01, the host controller will issue a CMD12 when the last

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
				block transfer is completed. 10: Auto CMD23 Enable When this bit field is set to 10, the host controller will issue a CMD23 before issuing a command specified in the Command Register 11: Reserved 00: Auto Command Disabled
1	BLK_CNT_EN	RW	1'b0	Block count enable. This bit is only valid for a multi-block transfer. When set to 0 the BLK_CNT register will be disabled. The multi-block transfer will be an infinite transfer
0	Reserved	RW	1'b0	Write 0 to this bit

Table 8-6 - 11.2.5 SDH_TNSFER_MODE – Transfer Mode Register

8.2.6 SDH_CMD – Command Register (address offset: 0x0E)

The host driver should check the Command Inhibit (CMD) and Command Inhibit (DAT) bits in the present state register to determine whether the SD bus is free to transfer.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description		
31:30	Reserved	-	-	-		
29:24	CMD_IDX	RW	6'h00	Command Index These bits should be assigned to bits [45:40] of the command field		
23:22	CMD_TYPE	RW	2'h0	11	Abort	CMD12/52 for writing I/O Abort in CCCR
				10	Resume	CMD52 for writing Function Select in CCCR
				01	Suspend	CMD52 for writing Bus Suspend in CCCR
				00	Normal	Other commands
21	DATA_PRE_SEL	RW	1'b0	Data Present Select 1: indicates that data is present and data transfer is enabled 0: under the following conditions **a.** Commands only using the CMD line **b.** Commands with no data transfer but using the busy signal on DAT[0] Resume command		
20	CMD_IDX_CHK_EN	RW	1'b0	Command Index Check Enable 1: the host controller will check the index field response to determine if the values are CMD_IDX. If they are not the same, CMD_IDX_ERR will be triggered		
19	CMD_CRC_CHK_EN	RW	1'b0	Command CRC Check Enable 1: the host controller will check the CRC field response to determine whether the CRC is correct. CMD_CRC_ERR will be triggered if an error is detected.		
18	Reserved	-	-	-		
17:16	RSP_TYPE_SEL	RW	2'h0	Response Type Select 11: Response length 48 with busy check after response		

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
				10: Response length 48 01: Response length 136 00: No response

Table 8-7 - 11.2.6 SDH_CMD – Command Register

8.2.7 SDH_RESPONSE – Response Register (address offset: 0x10-0x1C)

The Host Controller stores the Auto CMD12 response in the upper word of the Response Register to avoid the Auto CMD12 response, which tends to be overwritten by the other command.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
127:0	RSP	RO	0	Command Response

Table 8-8 - 11.2.7 SDH_RESPONSE – Response Register

8.2.8 SDH_BUF_DATA – Buffer Data Port Register (address offset: 0x20)

This register uses the 32-bit Data Port Register to access the internal buffer.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:0	DATA_PORT	RO	32'h0000_0000	Buffer Data Port Register

Table 8-9 - 11.2.8 SDH_BUF_DATA – Buffer Data Port Register

8.2.9 SDH_PRESENT_STATE – Present State Register (address offset: 0x24)

The host driver can access the status from this read-only register.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:25	Reserved	-	-	-
24	CMD_LIN_LV	RO		Command Line Signal Level
23:20	DATA_LIN_LV	RO		Data[3:0] Line Signal Level
19	WR_PROP_LV	RO		Write Protect Pin Level 1: Write enabled 0: Write protected
18	CD_PIN_LV	RO		Card Detect Pin Level 1: Card is detected 0: Card is not detected
17	SYS_CARD_STABLE	RO		Card State Stable 1: No card or card is inserted 0: Reset or de-bounce
16	SYS_CARD_INSERT	RO		Card Inserted 1: Card inserted 0: Reset, debouncing, or no card is detected
15:12	Reserved	-	-	-
11	BUF_RD_EN	ROC		Buffer Read Enable 1: Read Enable 0: Read Disable
10	BUF_WR_EN	ROC		Buffer Write Enable 1: Write Enable

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
				0: Write Disable
9	RD_TRAN_ACT	ROC		Read Transfer Active 1: under the following conditions: (1) After the end bit of a read command (2) When CONT_REQ in the block gap control register is set to restart a transfer. 0: under the following conditions: (1) When all data blocks specified by the block length are transferred to the system. (2) When SP_BLK_GAP in the block gap control register is set to 1 and the host controller has transferred all the valid data blocks to the system. The TRAN_CMPLT interrupt is generated when this bit changes from 1 to 0
8	WR_TRAN_ACT	ROC		Write Transfer Active 1: under the following conditions: (1) After the end bit of a write command (2) When CONT_REQ in the block gap control register is set to restart a transfer. 0: under the following conditions: (1) After getting the CRC status of the last data block specified by the transfer count. (2) After getting the CRC status of any block where data transmission is stopped by SP_BLK_GAP. A BLK_GAP_EVT interrupt will be generated when SP_BLK_GAP is set to 1 and this bit changes to 0. This bit is useful in the command with a busy data line.
7:3	Reserved	-	-	-
2	DATA_LIN_ACT	ROC		Data Line Active In a read transfer, this status bit is used to check whether a read transfer is executing on the bus. Changing this bit from 1 to 0 will generate a BLK_GAP_EVT interrupt when SP_BLK_GAP is set to 1. 1: under the following conditions: (1) After the end bit of a read command (2) When CONT_REQ in the block gap control register is set to restart a transfer. 0: under the following conditions: (1) When the end bit of the last data block is sent from the SD bus to the host controller. (2) When SP_BLK_GAP is set to 1 and a read transfer is stopped at the block gap. In a write transfer, this status bit is used to check whether a write transfer is executing on the bus. Changing this bit from 1 to 0 will generate a TRAN_CMPLT interrupt in the normal interrupt status register. 1: under the following conditions: (1) After the end bit of a read command (2) When CONT_REQ in the block gap control register is set to restart a transfer. 0: under the following conditions: (1) When the card release the busy signal of the last data block. (2) When SP_BLK_GAP is set to 1 and the

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
				card releases the write busy at the block gap. In the command with busy data line, this bit indicates whether a command with busy is executing on the bus. This bit will be set after the end bit of the command with busy and will be cleared when busy is de-asserted or busy is not detected after the end of a response.
1	CMD_INHIBIT_DAT	ROC		Command Inhibit (DAT) 1: Cannot issue new commands to use the data line 0: Issue new commands to use the data line
0	CMD_INHIBIT_CMD	ROC		Command Inhibit (CMD) 1: Cannot issue command 0: Issue command only with the command line

Table 8-10 - 11.2.9 SDH_PRESENT_STATE – Present State Register

8.2.10 SDH_HST_CNTL_1 – Host Control 1 Register (address offset: 0x28)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	CD_SEL	RW	1'b0	Card Detect Signal Selection 1: The test level for the card detection 0: The card detect pin is selected
6	CD_TEST_LV	RW	1'b0	Card Detect Test Level 1: Card is inserted 0: Card cannot be found
5	EXT_DATA_WIDTH	RW	1'b0	Extended Data Transfer Width 1: 8-bit bus width 0: Bus width is selected by the data transfer width
4:2	Reserved	-	-	-
1	DATA_WIDTH	RW	1'b0	Data Width 1: 4-bit mode 0: 1-bit mode
0	Reserved	-	-	-

Table 8-11 - SDH_HST_CNTL_1 – Host Control 1 Register

8.2.11 SDH_PWR_CNTL – Power Control Register (address offset: 0x29)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
15:12	Reserved	-	-	-
11:9	SD_BUS_VOL	RW	3'h0	SD Bus Voltage Select 111: 3.3V (Typ) 110: 3.0V (Typ) 101: 1.8V (Typ) Others: Reserved
8:0	Reserved	-	-	-

Table 8-12 - SDH_PWR_CNTL – Power Control Register

8.2.12 SDH_BLK_GAP_CNTL – Block Gap Control Register (address offset: 0x2A)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
23:20	Reserved	-	-	-
19	INT_BLK_GAP	RW	1'b0	1: Check the interrupt at block gap enabled
18	READ_WAIT	RW	1'b0	1: Enable Read Wait
17	CONT_REQ	RWAC	1'b0	1: To restart a transaction (SP_BLK_GAP must also be 1; if 0 this will be aborted) It is cleared automatically by the host controller when: **a.** In a read transfer, DATA_LIN_ACT changes from 0 to 1 to start a read transfer In a write transfer, WR_TRAN_ACT changes from 0 to 1 to start a write transfer
16	SP_BLK_GAP	RW	1'b0	1: Stop at block gap request; the host controller will stop at the block gap by using READ_WAIT or stop IO_SD_CLK in a read transaction 0: the host controller will not write data to DATA_PORT

Table 8-13 - SDH_BLK_GAP_CNTL – Block Gap Control Register

8.2.13 SDH_CLK_CNTL – Clock Control Register (address offset: 0x2C)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
15:8	LOW_BIT_SD_CLK_SEL	RW	8'h00	SD clock frequency value 7:0 for the 10-bit divided clock mode. These are used to select the frequency of the IO_SD_CLK pin. The base clock is ½ of chip system clock N: chip system clock * (1 / 2N) 0: not supported
7:6	UPPER_BIT_SD_CLK_SEL	RW	2'h0	SD clock frequency value 9:8 for the 10-bit divided clock mode
5	CLK_GEN_SEL	ROC	1'b0	This bit is always set to zero 0: 10-bit divided clock mode
4:3	Reserved	-	-	-
2	SD_CLK_EN	RW	1'b0	1: IO_SD_CLK will be output
1	CLK_STABLE	ROC	1'b0	This bit is set to 1 when the internal clock is stable
0	INTER_CLK_EN	RW	1'b0	1: Internal clock will start oscillating

Table 8-14 - SDH_CLK_CNTL – Clock Control Register

8.2.14 SDH_TIMEOUT_CNTL – Timeout Control Register (address offset: 0x2E)

This host driver should set the timeout value according to the capabilities register. The value of DATA_TIMER indicates the data line timeout times.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
23:20	Reserved	-	-	-
19:16	DATA_TIMER	RW	4'hE	1111: Reserved 1110: Chip system clk x 2^27 1101: Chip system clk x 2^26 ……. 0000: Chip system clk x 2^13

Table 8-15 - SDH_TIMEOUT_CNTL – Timeout Control Register

8.2.15 SDH_SW_RST – Software Reset Register (address offset: 0x2F)

A reset pulse will be generated when this bit is set to 1. This bit will be automatically cleared once the reset pulse is issued.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:27	Reserved	-	-	-
26	SOFT_RST_DAT	RWAC	1'b0	1: Software reset for data line
25	SOFT_RST_CMD	RWAC	1'b0	1: Software reset for command line
24	SOFT_RST_ALL	RWAC	1'b0	1: Software reset for all

Table 8-16 - SDH_SW_RST – Software Reset Register

8.2.16 SDH_NRML_INT_STATUS – Normal Interrupt Status Register (address offset: 0x30)

The interrupt status can be latched by setting the Normal Interrupt Status Enable register corresponding bit to 1.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
15	ERR_INT	ROC	1'b0	1: Error Interrupt
14:9	Reserved	-	-	-
8	CARD_INT	ROC	1'b0	1: Card Interrupt
7	CARD_REMOVE	RW1C	1'b0	1: Card Remove
6	CARD_INSERT	RW1C	1'b0	1: Card Inserted
5	BUF_RD_RDY	RW1C	1'b0	1: Buffer Read Ready
4	BUF_WR_RDY	RW1C	1'b0	1: Buffer Write Ready
3	Reserved	RW1C	1'b0	Write 0 to this bit

2	BLK_GAP_EVT	RW1C	1'b0	1: Block Gap Event
1	TRAN_CMPLT	RW1C	1'b0	1: Transfer Complete
0	CMD_CMPLT	RW1C	1'b0	1: Command Complete

Table 8-17 - SDH_NRML_INT_STATUS – Normal Interrupt Status Register

8.2.17 SDH_ERR_INT_STATUS – Error Interrupt Status Register (address offset: 0x32)

The interrupt status can be latched by setting the Error Interrupt Status Enable Register corresponding bit to 1.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:27	Reserved	-	-	-
26	Reserved	RW1C	1'b0	Write 0 to this bit
25	Reserved	RW1C	1'b0	Write 0 to this bit
24	AUTO_CMD12_ERR	RW1C	1'b0	Auto CMD12 error
23	CUR_LIM_ERR	RW1C	1'b0	Current limit error
22	DATA_END_BIT_ERR	RW1C	1'b0	Data End Bit error
21	DATA_CRC_ERR	RW1C	1'b0	Data CRC error
20	DATA_TIMEOUT_ERR	RW1C	1'b0	Data Timeout error
19	CMD_IDX_ERR	RW1C	1'b0	Command Index error
18	CMD_ERR_BIT_ERR	RW1C	1'b0	Command End Bit error
17	CMD_CRC_ERR	RW1C	1'b0	Command CRC error
16	CMD_TIMEOUT_ERR	RW1C	1'b0	Command Timeout error

Table 8-18 - SDH_ERR_INT_STATUS – Error Interrupt Status Register

8.2.18 SDH_NRML_INT_ENABLE – Normal Interrupt Status Enable Register (address offset: 0x34)

If the corresponding bit of the interrupt source in the normal interrupt status enable register is set to 1, the interrupt becomes active, which is latched and available for the host driver in the normal interrupt status register.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
15	Reserved	-	-	-
14:9	Reserved	-	-	-

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
8	CARD_INT_ST_EN	RW	1'b0	Card Interrupt status enable
7	CARD_REMOVE_ST_EN	RW	1'b0	Card Remove status enable
6	CARD_INSERT_ST_EN	RW	1'b0	Card Insert status enable
5	BUF_RD_RDY_ST_EN	RW	1'b0	Buffer Read Ready status enable
4	BUF_WR_RDY_ST_EN	RW	1'b0	Buffer Write Ready status enable
3	Reserved	RW	1'b0	Write 0 to this bit
2	BLK_GAP_EVT_ST_EN	RW	1'b0	Block Gap Event status enable
1	TRAN_CMPLT_ST_EN	RW	1'b0	Transfer Complete status enable
0	CMD_CMPLT_ST_EN	RW	1'b0	Command Complete status enable

Table 8-19 - SDH_NRML_INT_ENABLE – Normal Interrupt Status Enable Register

8.2.19 SDH_ERR_INT_ENABLE – Error Interrupt Status Enable Register (address offset: 0x36)

If the corresponding bit of the interrupt source in the Error Interrupt Status Enable Register is set to 1 and if the interrupt becomes active, the active state will be latched and will be available for the host driver in this register.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:26	Reserved	-	-	-
25	Reserved	RW	1'b0	Write 0 to this bit
24	AUTO_CMD12_ERR_ST_EN	RW	1'b0	Auto CMD12 error status enable
23	CUR_LIM_ERR_ST_EN	RW	1'b0	Current limit error status enable
22	DATA_END_BIT_ERR_ST_EN	RW	1'b0	Data End Bit error status enable
21	DATA_CRC_ERR_ST_EN	RW	1'b0	Data CRC error status enable
20	DATA_TIMEOUT_ERR_ST_EN	RW	1'b0	Data Timeout error status enable
19	CMD_IDX_ERR_ST_EN	RW	1'b0	Command Index error status enable
18	CMD_END_BIT_ERR_ST_EN	RW	1'b0	Command End Bit error status enable
17	CMD_CRC_ERR_ST_EN	RW	1'b0	Command CRC error status enable
16	CMD_TIMEOUT_ERR_ST_EN	RW	1'b0	Command Timeout error status enable

Table 8-20 - SDH_ERR_INT_ENABLE – Error Interrupt Status Enable Register

8.2.20 SDH_NRML_INT_SGNL_ENABLE – Normal Interrupt Signal Enable Register (address offset: 0x38)

This register is used to select the interrupt status that is notified to the host system as an interrupt. These interrupt statuses share the same interrupt line.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
15	Reserved	-	-	-
14:9	Reserved	-	-	-
8	CARD_INT_SIG_EN	RW	1'b0	Card Interrupt signal enable
7	CARD_REMOVE_SIG_EN	RW	1'b0	Card Remove signal enable
6	CARD_INSERT_SIG_EN	RW	1'b0	Card Insert signal enable
5	BUF_RD_RDY_SIG_EN	RW	1'b0	Buffer Read Ready signal enable
4	BUF_WR_RDY_SIG_EN	RW	1'b0	Buffer Write Ready signal enable
3	Reserved	RW	1'b0	Write 0 to this bit
2	BLK_GAP_EVT_SIG_EN	RW	1'b0	Block Gap Event signal enable
1	TRAN_CMPLT_SIG_EN	RW	1'b0	Transfer Complete signal enable
0	CMD_CMPLT_SIG_EN	RW	1'b0	Command Complete signal enable

Table 8-21 - SDH_NRML_INT_SGNL_ENABLE – Normal Interrupt Signal Enable Register

8.2.21 SDH_ERR_INT_SGNL_ENABLE – Error Interrupt Signal Enable Register (address offset: 0x3A)

This register is used to select the interrupt status that is regarded by the host system as an interrupt. These interrupt statuses share the same interrupt line.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:26	Reserved	-	-	-
25	Reserved	RW	1'b0	Write 0 to this bit
24	AUTO_CMD12_ERR_SIG_EN	RW	1'b0	Auto CMD12 error signal enable
23	CUR_LIM_ERR_SIG_EN	RW	1'b0	Current limit error signal enable
22	DATA_END_BIT_ERR_SIG_EN	RW	1'b0	Data End Bit error signal enable
21	DATA_CRC_ERR_SIG_EN	RW	1'b0	Data CRC error signal enable
20	DATA_TIMEOUT_ERR_SIG_EN	RW	1'b0	Data Timeout error signal enable
19	CMD_IDX_ERR_SIG_EN	RW	1'b0	Command Index error signal enable

18	CMD_END_BIT_ERR_SIG_EN	RW	1'b0	Command End Bit error signal enable
17	CMD_CRC _ERR_SIG_EN	RW	1'b0	Command CRC error signal enable
16	CMD_TIMEOUT_ERR_SIG_EN	RW	1'b0	Command Timeout error signal enable

Table 8-22 - SDH_ERR_INT_SGNL_ENABLE – Error Interrupt Signal Enable Register

8.2.22 SDH_AUTO_CMD12_ERR_STATUS – Auto CMD12 Error Status Register (address offset: 0x3C)

When the auto_cmd12_en register is set to 1 and the auto cmd12 error status register is set, the host driver will check this register to identify what kind of error happens during executing AUTO CMD12. This register is valid only when the auto_cmd12_err is set to 1.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
15:8	Reserved	-	-	-
7	CMD_NO_EX_BY_CMD12	ROC	1'b0	Command not executed by Auto CMD12 error
6:5	Reserved	-	-	-
4	AUTO_CMD_IDX_ERR	ROC	1'b0	Auto CMD index error
3	AUTO_CMD_END_BIT_ERR	ROC	1'b0	Auto CMD end bit error
2	AUTO_CMD_CRC_ERR	ROC	1'b0	Auto CMD CRC error
1	AUTO_CMD_TIMEOUT_ERR	ROC	1'b0	Auto CMD timeout error
0	AUTO_CMD12_NO_EX	ROC	1'b0	Auto CMD12 not executed

Table 8-23 - SDH_AUTO_CMD12_ERR_STATUS – Auto CMD12 Error Status Register

8.2.23 SDH_HOST_CNTL_2 – Host Control 2 Register (address offset: 0x3E)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31	PRESET_VAL_EN	RW	1'b0	0: SDCLK and driver strength are controlled by the host driver 1: automatic selection by the pre-set value
30	ASYN_INT_EN	R/W	1'b0	Asynchronous Interrupt Enable
29:24	Reserved	-	-	-
23	SAMPLE_CLK_SEL	RW	1'b0	Sampling clock select 0: Fixed clock is used to sample data
22:16	Reserved	-	-	-

Table 8-24 - SDH_HOST_CNTL_2 – Host Control 2 Register

8.2.24 SDH_CAP_1 – Capabilities Register 1 (address offset: 0x40)

The host controller may implement these values during initialization.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:30	SLOT_TYPE	RO	2'h0	Removable Card Slot
29	ASYNC_INT_SUPPORT	RO	1'b0	0: not supported
28	BUT_64_SYPPORT	RO	1'b0	0: not supported
27	Reserved	-	-	-
26:25	Reserved	-	-	-
24	VOLTAGE_3_3_SUPPORT	RO	1'b1	Voltage supports 3.3V
23	SUSPEND_RESUME_SUPPORT	RO	1'b0	0: Suspend / Resume not supported
22	Reserved	RO	1'b1	-
21	HI_SPEED_SUPPORT	RO	1'b1	1: High speed supported
20	Reserved	RO	1'b0	-
19	Reserved	RO	1'b1	-
18	8BIT_SUPPORT	RO	1'b0	0: 8-bit not supported
17:16	MAX_BLK_LEN	R0	2'h2	2: 2048 bytes
15:8	BASE_CLK_FOR_SD_CLK	RO	8'h00	0: Get information via another method
7	TIMEOUT_CLK_UNIT	RO	1'b1	1: MHz
6	Reserved	-	-	-
5:0	TIMEOUT_CLK_FREQ	RO	6'h00	0: Get information via another method

Table 8-25 - SDH_CAP_1 – Capabilities Register 1

8.2.25 SDH_CAP_2 – Capabilities Register 2 (address offset: 0x44)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:24	Reserved	-	-	-
23:16	CLK_MULTI	RO	8'h00	not supported
15:12	Reserved	-	-	-
11:8	Reserved	RO	4'hF	-

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	Reserved	-	-	-
6	DRIVER_D_SUPPORT	RO	1'b1	not supported
5	DRIVER_C_SUPPORT	RO	1'b1	not supported
4	DRIVER_A_SUPPORT	RO	1'b1	not supported
3	Reserved	-	-	-
2	DDR50_SUPPORT	RO	1'b1	not supported
1	SDR104_SUPPORT	RO	1'b0	not supported
0	SDR50_SUPPORT	RO	1'b1	not supported

Table 8-26 - SDH_CAP_2 – Capabilities Register 2

8.2.26 SDH_RSRV_1 – Reserved 1 Register (address offset: 0x48)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:0	Reserved	-	-	-

Table 8-27 - SDH_RSRV_1 – Reserved 1 Register

8.2.27 SDH_RSRV_2 – Reserved 2 Register (address offset: 0x4C)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:0	Reserved	-	-	-

Table 8-28 - SDH_RSRV_2 – Reserved 2 Register

8.2.28 SDH_FORCE_EVT_CMD_ERR_STATUS – Force Event Register for Auto CMD Error Status (address offset: 0x50)

The Force Event register is not a physical register. It is an address to which the Auto CMD error status register can be written. The force event register is only for debugging.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
15:8	Reserved	-	-	-
7	R_CMD_NO_EX_BY_CMD 12	WO	1'b0	Force event for the Command Not Executed by Auto CMD12 Error
6:5	Reserved	-	-	-
4	R_CMD_IDX_ERR	WO	1'b0	Force event for the Auto CMD Index Error
3	R_CMD_END_BIT_ERR	WO	1'b0	Force event for the Auto CMD End Bit Error

2	R_CMD_CRC_ERR	WO	1'b0	Force event for the Auto CMD CRC Error
1	R_CMD_TIMEOUT_ERR	WO	1'b0	Force event for the Auto CMD Timeout Error
0	R_CMD12_NO_EX	WO	1'b0	Force event for the Auto CMD12 Not Executed

Table 8-29 - SDH_FORCE_EVT_CMD_ERR_STATUS – Force Event Register for Auto CMD Error Status

8.2.29 SDH_FORCE_EVT_ERR_INT_STATUS – Force Event for Error Interrupt Status Register (address offset: 0x52)

The Force Event register is not a physical register. It is an address to which the error interrupt status register can be written. This Force Event register is for debugging only. The effect of writing to this address will be reflected in the error interrupt status register if the corresponding bit of the error interrupt status enable register is set.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:25	Reserved	-	-	Write 0 to these bits
24	R_AUTP_CMD_ERR	WO	1'b0	Force Event for the Auto CMD Error
23	R_CUR_LIMIT_ERR	WO	1'b0	Force Event for the Current Limit Error
22	R_DATA_END_BIT_ERR	WO	1'b0	Force Event for the Data End Bit Error
21	R_DATA_CRC_ERR	WO	1'b0	Force Event for the Data CRC Error
20	R_DATA_TIMEOUT_ERR	WO	1'b0	Force Event for the Data Timeout Error
19	R_CMD_IDX_ERR	WO	1'b0	Force Event for the Command Index Error
18	R_CMD_END_BIT_ERR	WO	1'b0	Force Event for the Command End Bit Error
17	R_CMD_CRC_ERR	WO	1'b0	Force Event for the Command CRC Error
16	R_CMD_TIMEOUT_ERR	WO	1'b0	Force Event for the Command Timeout Error

Table 8-30 - SDH_FORCE_EVT_ERR_INT_STATUS – Force Event for Error Interrupt Status Register

8.2.30 SDH_RSRV_3 – Reserved 3 Register (address offset: 0x54)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:0	Reserved	-	-	-

Table 8-31 - SDH_RSRV_3 – Reserved 3 Register

8.2.31 SDH_RSRV_4 – Reserved 4 Register (address offset: 0x58)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:0	Reserved	-	-	-

Table 8-32 - SDH_RSRV_4 – Reserved 4 Register

8.2.32 SDH_PRST_INIT - Preset value for initialization (address offset: 0x60)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
15:14	DRIVER_STR_SEL	RO		Driver Strength Select Value Driver Strength is supported by the 1.8-V signalling bus speed modes. This field is meaningless for the 3.3-V signalling 11: Driver type D is selected 10: Driver type C is selected 01: Driver type A is selected 00: Driver type B is selected
13:11	Reserved	-	-	-
10	CLK_GEN_SEL	RO	1'b0	Clock Generator Select Value The version does not support the programmable clock generator and is fixed to 0
9:0	SDCLK_FREQ_SEL	RO		SDCLK Frequency Select Value The 10-bit pre-set value for setting the SDCLK Frequency Select in the Clock Control. The register is described by a host system.

Table 8-33 - SDH_PRST_INIT – Preset value for initialization

8.2.33 SDH_PRST_DFLT_SPD – Preset value for default speed (address offset: 0x62)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
15:11	Reserved	-	-	-
10	CLK_GEN_SEL	RO	1'b0	Clock Generator Select Value The version does not support the programmable clock generator and is fixed to 0
9:0	SDCLK_FREQ_SEL	RO		SDCLK Frequency Select Value The 10-bit pre-set value for setting the SDCLK Frequency Select in the Clock Control. The register is described by a host system.

Table 8-34 - SDH_PRST_DFLT_SPD – Preset value for default speed

8.2.34 SDH_PRST_HIGH_SPD – Preset value for the high speed (address offset: 0x64)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
15:11	Reserved	-	-	-
10	CLK_GEN_SEL	RO		Clock Generator Select Value The version does not support the programmable clock generator and is fixed to 0
9:0	SDCLK_FREQ_SEL	RO		SDCLK Frequency Select Value The 10-bit pre-set value for setting the SDCLK Frequency Select in the Clock Control. The register is described by a host system.

Table 8-35 - SDH_PRST_HIGH_SPD – Preset value for the high speed

8.2.35 SDH_PRST_SDR12 – Preset value for SDR12 (address offset: 0x66)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
15:14	DRIVER_STR_SEL	RO		Driver Strength Select Value Driver Strength is supported by the 1.8-V signalling bus speed modes. This field is meaningless for the 3.3-V signalling 11: Driver type D is selected 10: Driver type C is selected 01: Driver type A is selected 00: Driver type B is selected
13:11	Reserved	-	-	-
10	CLK_GEN_SEL	RO	1'b0	Clock Generator Select Value The version does not support the programmable clock generator and is fixed to 0
9:0	SDCLK_FREQ_SEL	RO		SDCLK Frequency Select Value The 10-bit pre-set value for setting the SDCLK Frequency Select in the Clock Control. The register is described by a host system.

Table 8-36 - SDH_PRST_SDR12 – Preset value for SDR12

8.2.36 SDH_PRST_SDR25 – Preset value for SDR25 (address offset: 0x68)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
15:14	DRIVER_STR_SEL	RO		Driver Strength Select Value Driver Strength is supported by the 1.8-V signalling bus speed modes. This field is meaningless for the 3.3-V signalling 11: Driver type D is selected 10: Driver type C is selected 01: Driver type A is selected 00: Driver type B is selected
13:11	Reserved	-	-	-
10	CLK_GEN_SEL	RO	1'b0	Clock Generator Select Value The version does not support the programmable clock generator and is

				fixed to 0
9:0	SDCLK_FREQ_SEL	RO		SDCLK Frequency Select Value The 10-bit pre-set value for setting the SDCLK Frequency Select in the Clock Control. The register is described by a host system.

Table 8-37 - SDH_PRST_SDR25 – Preset value for SDR25

8.2.37 SDH_PRST_SDR50 – Preset value for SDR50 (address offset: 0x6A)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
15:14	DRIVER_STR_SEL	RO		Driver Strength Select Value Driver Strength is supported by the 1.8-V signalling bus speed modes. This field is meaningless for the 3.3-V signalling 11: Driver type D is selected 10: Driver type C is selected 01: Driver type A is selected 00: Driver type B is selected
13:11	Reserved	-	-	-
10	CLK_GEN_SEL	RO	1'b0	Clock Generator Select Value The version does not support the programmable clock generator and is fixed to 0
9:0	SDCLK_FREQ_SEL	RO		SDCLK Frequency Select Value The 10-bit pre-set value for setting the SDCLK Frequency Select in the Clock Control. The register is described by a host system.

Table 8-38 - SDH_PRST_SDR50 – Preset value for SDR50

8.2.38 SDH_PRST_SDR104 – Preset value for SDR104 (address offset: 0x6C)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
15:14	DRIVER_STR_SEL	RO		Driver Strength Select Value Driver Strength is supported by the 1.8-V signalling bus speed modes. This field is meaningless for the 3.3-V signalling 11: Driver type D is selected 10: Driver type C is selected 01: Driver type A is selected 00: Driver type B is selected
13:11	Reserved	-	-	-
10	CLK_GEN_SEL	RO	1'b0	Clock Generator Select Value The version does not support the programmable clock generator and is fixed to 0
9:0	SDCLK_FREQ_SEL	RO		SDCLK Frequency Select Value The 10-bit pre-set value for setting the SDCLK Frequency Select in the Clock Control. The register is described by a host system.

Table 8-39 - SDH_PRST_SDR104 – Preset value for SDR104

8.2.39 SDH_PRST_DDR50 – Preset value for DDR50 (address offset: 0x6E)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
15:14	DRIVER_STR_SEL	RO		Driver Strength Select Value Driver Strength is supported by the 1.8-V signalling bus speed modes. This field is meaningless for the 3.3-V signalling 11: Driver type D is selected 10: Driver type C is selected 01: Driver type A is selected 00: Driver type B is selected
13:11	Reserved	-	-	-
10	CLK_GEN_SEL	RO	1'b0	Clock Generator Select Value The version does not support the programmable clock generator and is fixed to 0
9:0	SDCLK_FREQ_SEL	RO		SDCLK Frequency Select Value The 10-bit pre-set value for setting the SDCLK Frequency Select in the Clock Control. The register is described by a host system.

Table 8-40 - SDH_PRST_DDR50 – Preset value for DDR50

8.2.40 SDH_RSRV_5 – Reserved 5 Register (address offset: 0xFC)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
15:0	Reserved	-	-	-

Table 8-41 - SDH_RSRV_5 – Reserved 5 Register

8.2.41 SDH_HC_VER – Host Controller Version Register (address offset: 0xFE)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:24	VNDR_VER_NUM	RO	8'h00	Vendor Version Number
23:16	SPEC_VER_NUM	RO	8'h02	Specification Version Number

Table 8-42 - SDH_HC_VER – Host Controller Version Register

8.2.42 SDH_VNDR_0 – Vendor-defined 0 Register (address offset: 0x100)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:28	Reserved	-	-	-
27:24	N_CRC	RW	4'h0	Write CRC Status Wait Cycle The host controller is used to set 5 SCLK clock cycles for the specifications and round-chip effect. Users can add the wait cycle for other factors.
23:17	Reserved	-	-	-

16	INT_EDGE_SEL	RW	1'b0	1: The CMD and DAT line output at the rising edge of SCLK 0: The CMD and DAT line output at the falling edge of SCLK
15:14	Reserved	-	-	-
13:8	P_LAT_OFF	RW	6'h00	Pulse latch offset When the host controller uses the pulse latch to sample the read data and response, users need to set the latch offset to correctly sample the value. The values set should be smaller than the SDCLK Frequency Select 0x3F: Latch value at the 63rd ½ chip frequency clock rising edge after the SCLK edge …. 0x01: Latch value at the 1st 0x00: Latch value at SCLK edge
7:1	Reserved	-	-	-
0	P_LAT_EN	RW	1'b1	1: Use the pulse latching function for the read data and response. Should always be set to 1.

Table 8-43 - SDH_VNDR_0 – Vendor-defined 0 Register

8.2.43 SDH_VNDR_1 – Vendor-defined 1 Register (address offset: 0x104)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:25	Reserved	-	-	-
24	CMD_CONFLICT_EN	RW	1'b0	1: Enable host controller to check the CMD line conflict error
23:19	Reserved	-	-	-
18:16	N_SB	RW	3'h0	N_SB Timing: Users can add the busy wait cycle for other factors. The host controller is set to 5 SCLK clock cycles
15:12	Reserved	-	-	-
11:8	N_CR	RW	3'h0	N_CR Timing: Users can add the response wait cycle for other factors. The host controller is set to 64 SCLK clock cycles
7:3	Reserved	-	-	-
2	MMC_BOOT_ACK_EN	RW	1'b0	MMC Booting Mode Acknowledge Enable
1:0	MMC_BOOT	RW	2'h0	MMC Booting Mode Selection 11: MMC Bus Test mode 10: MMC Alternative Boot Mode 01: MMC Boot mode 00: Normal mode

Table 8-44 - SDH_VNDR_1 – Vendor-defined 1 Register

8.2.44 SDH_VNDR_2 – Vendor-defined 2 Register (address offset: 0x108)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:1	Reserved	-	-	-
0	CLK_CTRL_SW_RST	RWAC	1'b0	1: To reset the clock control of the host controller

Table 8-45 - SDH_VNDR_2 – Vendor-defined 2 Register

8.2.45 SDH_VNDR_3 – Vendor-defined 3 Register (address offset: 0x10C)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:29	Reserved	-	-	-
28:24	Reserved	-	5'h1F	-
23:0	Reserved	-	-	-

Table 8-46 - SDH_VNDR_3 – Vendor-defined 3 Register

8.2.46 SDH_VNDR_4 – Vendor-defined 4 Register (address offset: 0x110)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:0	Reserved	RO	-	-

Table 8-47 - SDH_VNDR_4 – Vendor-defined 4 Register

8.2.47 SDH_VNDR_5 – Vendor-defined 5 Register (address offset: 0x114)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:4	Reserved	-	-	-
3:0	DB_TIMEOUT	RW	4'h0	Card Insertion De-bounce Cycle 0: 2^9 chip system clock cycles 1: 2^{10} chip system clock cycles …. 15: 2^{24} chip system clock cycles

Table 8-48 - SDH_VNDR_5 – Vendor-defined 5 Register

8.2.48 SDH_VNDR_6 – Vendor-defined 6 Register (address offset: 0x118)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:1	Reserved	-	-	-
0	HBURST_INCR	RW	1'b1	0: AHB master uses SINGLE and INCR4 as the AHB burst type

Table 8-49 - SDH_VNDR_6 – Vendor-defined 6 Register

8.2.49 SDH_VNDR_7 – Vendor-defined 7 Register (address offset: 0x11C)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:1	Reserved	-	-	-
0	AHB_RESP_ERR_STS	RW1C	1'b0	This bit is set when the AHB master receives an error type response

Table 8-50 - SDH_VNDR_7 – Vendor-defined 7 Register

8.2.50 SDH_VNDR_8 – Vendor-defined 8 Register (address offset: 0x120)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:1	Reserved	-	-	-
0	AHB_RESP_ERR_STS_EN	RW	1'b0	1: Enable the AHB master response error status

Table 8-51 - SDH_VNDR_8 – Vendor-defined 8 Register

8.2.51 SDH_VNDR_9 – Vendor-defined 9 Register (address offset: 0x124)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:1	Reserved	-	-	-
0	AHB_RESP_ERR_SIG_EN	RW	1'b0	1: Enable the interrupt generation when the AHB master response status is set

Table 8-52 - SDH_VNDR_9 – Vendor-defined 9 Register

8.2.52 SDH_RSRV_6 – Reserved 6 Register (address offset: 0x128)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:0	Reserved	-	-	-

Table 8-53 - SDH_RSRV_6 – Reserved 6 Register

8.2.53 SDH_HW_ATTR – Hardware Attributes Register (address offset: 0x178)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:9	Reserved	-	-	-
8:0	HW_CONFIG	RO	9'h150	8: Async 7: 4-bit SD data bus 6: CPRM present 5: DLL absent 4:0 DATA FIFO is 4k SRAM

Table 8-54 - SDH_HW_ATTR – Hardware Attributes Register

8.2.54 SDH_CPR_MOD_CNTL – Cipher Mode Control Register (address offset: 0x180)

This register is the configurable register for the CPRM function. When the CPRM function is used, this register will be used to select the mode of the cipher function to encrypt or decrypt.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:11	Reserved	-	-	-
10	SWAP_HL	RW	1'b0	1: Swap the high/low word of the encrypted data to TX FIFO The high-word and low-word of the encrypted data will be swapped before being written to TX FIFO. The high-word and low-word of the encrypted data will be swapped before decryption.
9	CH_ENDIAN	RW	1'b0	Change Endianness In this mode, the endianness of the encrypted data will be changed before being written to the TX FIFO. In this mode, the endianness of data from the RX FIFO will be changed before decryption.
8	SEC_ACCESS_EN	RW	1'b0	Secret Constant Table Access Enable This bit must be enabled before writing or reading the secret constant table. Once this bit is enabled, the firmware will always access from the very beginning of the secret constant table.
7	AUTO_C2_DCBC_EN	RW	1'b0	Auto C2 Decryption with C-CBC Mode Enable In this mode, data will be automatically decrypted and sent to the buffer. The data lengths should be multiples of 8 bytes.
6	AUTO_C2_ECBC_EN	RW	1'b0	Auto C2 Encryption with C-CBC Mode Enable In this mode, data written to the buffer will be automatically encrypted and sent to the TX FIFO. The data lengths should be multiples of 8 bytes.
5	RNGC2_G_EN	RW	1'b0	C2 Random Number Generator Enable
4	C2_DCBC_EN	RW	1'b0	C2 Decryption with C-CBC Mode Enable
3	C2_D_EN	RW	1'b0	C2 Decryption with EBC Mode Enable
2	C2_ECBC_EN	RW	1'b0	C2 Encryption with C-CBC Mode Enable
1	C2_E_EN	RW	1'b0	C2 Encryption with EBC Mode Enable
0	C2_G_EN	RW	1'b0	C2 One Way Function Enable

Table 8-55 - SDH_CPR_MOD_CNTL – Cipher Mode Control Register

8.2.55 SDH_CPR_MOD_STATUS – Cipher Mode Status Register (address offset: 0x184)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:1	Reserved	-	-	-
0	CP_RDY	RW1C	1'b0	Cipher is ready When this bit is set to 1, reading 0x19C and 0x1A0 will retrieve cipher or plain text

Table 8-56 - SDH_CPR_MOD_STATUS – Cipher Mode Status Register

8.2.56 SDH_CPR_MOD_STATUS_EN – Cipher Mode Status Enable Register (address offset: 0x188)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:1	Reserved	-	-	-
0	RDY_SIG_EN	RW	1'b0	Cipher Ready Signal Enable

Table 8-57 - SDH_CPR_MOD_STATUS_EN – Cipher Mode Status Enable Register

8.2.57 SDH_CPR_MOD_SIG_EN – Cipher Mode Signal Enable Register (address offset: 0x18A)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:1	Reserved	-	-	-
0	RDY_SIG_EN	RW	1'b0	Cipher Ready Signal Enable

Table 8-58 - SDH_CPR_MOD_SIG_EN – Cipher Mode Signal Enable Register

8.2.58 SDH_IN_DATA_LSB – Input Data LSB Register (address offset: 0x18C)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:0	DATA	RW	32'h0000_0000	Input port for the input data bits 31:0

Table 8-59 - SDH_IN_DATA_LSB – Input Data LSB Register

8.2.59 SDH_IN_DATA_MSB - Input Data MSB Register (address offset: 0x190)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:0	DATA	RW	32'h0000_0000	Input port for the input data bits 63:32

Table 8-60 - SDH_IN_DATA_MSB – Input Data MSB Register

8.2.60 SDH_IN_KEY_LSB – Input Key LSB Register (address offset: 0x194)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:0	KEY	RW	32'h0000_0000	Input port for the input key bits 31:0

Table 8-61 - SDH_IN_KEY_LSB – Input Key LSB Register

8.2.61 SDH_IN_KEY_MSB – Input Key MSB Register (address offset: 0x198)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:0	KEY	RW	32'h0000_0000	Input port for the input key bits 63:32

Table 8-62 - SDH_IN_KEY_MSB – Input Key MSB Register

8.2.62 SDH_OUT_DATA_LSB – Output Data LSB Register (address offset: 0x19C)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:0	DATA	RW	32'h0000_0000	Output port for the output data bits 31:0

Table 8-63 - SDH_OUT_DATA_LSB – Output Data LSB Register

8.2.63 SDH_OUT_DATA_MSB – Output Data MSB Register (address offset: 0x1A0)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:0	DATA	RW	32'h0000_0000	Output port for the output data bits 63:32

Table 8-64 - SDH_OUT_DATA_MSB – Output Data MSB Register

8.2.64 SDH_SCRT_CONS_DATA – Secret Constant Table Data Port (address offset: 0x1A4)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
31:8	Reserved	-	-	-
7:0	DATA_PORT	RW	8'h00	Secret constant table data port. 256 bytes are needed; this port should be written 256 times to initialize the secret constant table

Table 8-65 - SDH_SCRT_CONS_DATA – Secret Constant Table Data Port

9 UART

The device supports 2 UARTs with the following features:

- Software compatible with 450, 550, 750 and 950 UARTs
- Separate configurable BAUD clock line
- Configuration capability
- Two modes of operation: UART mode and FIFO mode
- Majority voting logic
- 16 / 128 bytes FIFO for TX and RX in FIFO mode to reduce the interrupt frequency
- adds or deletes standard asynchronous communication bits (start, stop and parity) to or from the serial data
- Double buffering for both TX and RX in UART mode
- Independently controlled transmit, receive, line status and data set interrupts
- Programmable baud generator
- MODEM control functions (CTS, RTS, DSR, DTR, RI and DCD)
- Programmable automatic out-of-band Flow Control logic through Auto-RTS and Auto-CTS
- Programmable automatic Flow Control logic using DTR and DSR
- Programmable automatic in-band Flow Control logic using XON / XOFF characters
- Programmable special characters detection
- Trigger levels for TX and RX FIFO interrupts, automatic in-band and out-of-band flow control
- RS-485 buffer enable signals
- TX and RX disable capability
- Fully programmable serial interface characteristics:
    - 5-, 6-, 7-, 8- or 9-bit characters
    - Even, odd, or no-parity bit generation and detection
    - 1-, 1.5, or 2-stop bit generation
    - Baud generation
    - Detection of bad data in receive FIFO
- Clock prescaler from 1 to 31875
- Enhanced isochronous clock option
- Complete status reporting capabilities
- False start bit detection
- Line-break generation and detection. Internal diagnostic capabilities:

- Loop-back controls for communications link fault isolation
- Break, parity, overrun, framing error simulation

- Full prioritised interrupt system controls
- Software reset

9.1 Register Summary

The registers offset from the base addresses are:

- 0x10520 for UART 0
- 0x10530 for UART 1
- 0x10540 for UART 2
- 0x10550 for UART 3

All registers can only be accessed via Byte (8-bit) mode.

Offset	Register	Default Value	Reference
	STANDARD 550 COMPATIBLE REGISTERS		
0x00	UART_RBR - Receiver Buffer Register	0x00	Section 13.3.1
0x00	UART_THR - Transmitter Holding Register	0x00	Section 13.3.2
0x00	UART_DIV_LSB - Divisor LSB Register	0x00	Section 13.3.3
0x01	UART_DIV_MSB - Divisor MSB Register	0x00	Section 13.3.4
0x01	UART_INT_ENABLE - Interrupt Enable Register	0x00	Section 13.3.5
0x02	UART_INT_STATUS - Interrupt Status Register	0x00	Section 13.3.6
0x02	UART_FCR FIFO - Control Register	0x00	Section 13.3.7
0x03	UART_LCR Line - Control Register	0x00	Section 13.3.8
0x04	UART_MCR - Modem Control Register	0x00	Section 13.3.9
0x05	UART_LSR - Line Status Register	0x00	Section 13.3.10
0x06	UART_MSR - Modem Status Register	0x00	Section 13.3.11
0x07	UART_SPR - SPR Register	0x00	Section 13.3.12
	650 COMPATIBLE REGISTERS		
0x02	UART_EFR - Enhanced Feature Register	0x00	Section 13.4.1
0x04	UART_XON1 - XON1 Register	0x00	Section 13.4.2
0x05	UART_XON2 - XON2 Register	0x00	Section 13.4.3
0x06	UART_XOFF1 - XOFF1 Register	0x00	Section 13.4.4
0x07	UART_XOFF2 - XOFF2 Register	0x00	Section 13.4.5
	950 COMPATIBLE REGISTERS		

0x01	UART_ASR - Additional Status Register	0x00	Section 13.5.1
0x03	UART_RFL - Receiver FIFO Level Register	0x00	Section 13.5.2
0x04	UART_TFL - Transmitter FIFO Level Register	0x00	Section 13.5.3
0x05	UART_ICR - ICR Register	0x00	Section 13.5.4
	INDEXED CONTROL REGISTERS		
0x00	UART_ACR - Additional Control Register	0x00	Section 13.6.1
0x01	UART_CPR - Clock Prescaler Register	0x00	Section 13.6.2
0x02	UART_TCR - Time Clock Register	0x00	Section 13.6.3
0x03	UART_CKS - Clock Select Register	0x00	Section 13.6.4
0x04	UART_TTL - Transmitter Trigger Level Register	0x00	Section 13.6.5
0x05	UART_RTL - Receiver Trigger Level Register	0x00	Section 13.6.6
0x06	UART_FCL - Flow Control Level LSB Register	0x00	Section 13.6.7
0x07	UART_FCH - Flow Control Level Register MSB	0x00	Section 13.6.8
0x08	UART_ID1 - Identification 1 Register	0x00	Section 13.6.9
0x09	UART_ID2 - Identification 2 Register	0x00	Section 13.6.10
0x0A	UART_ID3 - Identification 3 Register	0x00	Section 13.6.11
0x0B	UART_REV - Revision Register	0x00	Section 13.6.12
0x0C	UART_CSR - Channel Software Reset Register	0x00	Section 13.6.13
0x0D	UART_NMR - Nine Bit Mode Register	0x00	Section 13.6.14
0x0E	UART_MDM - Modem Disable Mask Register	0x00	Section 13.6.15
0x0F	UART_RFC - Readable FCR Register	0x00	Section 13.6.16
0x10	UART_GDS - Good Data Status Register	0x00	Section 13.6.17
0x11	UART_RSRV_1 - Reserved 1 Register	0x00	Section 13.6.18
0x12	UART_PIDX - Port Index Register	0x00	Section 13.6.19
0x13	UART_CKA - Clock Alteration Register	0x00	Section 13.6.20

Table 9-1 - Overview of UART Registers

9.2 UART MODE SELECTION

The operation of the UART depends on a number of standard mode settings. These modes are referred to throughout this section. The compatibility modes are tabulated below.

UART Mode	FIFO Size	FCR(0)	Enhanced Mode EFR(4) = 1	FCR(5) Guarded with LCR(7) = 1	FIFOSEL pin
450	1	0	X	X	X
550	16	1	0	0	0
Extended 550	128	1	0	X	1
650	128	1	1	X	X
750	128	1	0	1	0
950	128	1	1	X	X

Table 9-2 - UART mode selection

450 Mode

The 450 mode is the default mode set after a hardware reset. In the 450 Mode the FIFO is disabled, and the UART operates in BYTE mode. With FCR[0] cleared, (FIFO disabled) all other mode setting are ignored.

550 Mode

In the 550 mode the FIFO's are enabled, and can accept up to 16 bytes of data (reception and transmission directions). To put the UART into 550 mode, the FCR[0] should be set high. In this mode the FIFOSEL pin should be tied low.

Extended 550 Mode

The extended 550 mode is enabled by connection of the FIFOSEL to a HIGH state. In this mode the FIFO size is increased to 128 bytes.

750 Mode

The 750 mode is enabled by writing the FCR[0] with 1 and FCR[5] with 1. In the 750 mode the FIFO size is set to 128 bytes. Please note, that writes to FCR[5] are protected by FCR[7]. To write FCR[5], first set the FCR[7] high, then write FCR[5], and clear FCR[7] to activate protection. In the 750 mode the FIFOSEL pin should be tied low (0).

750 mode enhancements over 550 mode:

- Deeper FIFO size
- Automatic RTS/CTS out-of-band flow control
- Sleep mode

650 Mode

The 650 mode is active when EFR[4] is set (enhanced mode is enabled). As 650 software drivers usually put the device into enhanced mode, running 650 drivers on the UART device will result in 650 compatibility with 128 deep FIFO's, as long as FCR[0] is set.

The FIFOSEL state is ignored in the 650 mode.

The 650 mode enhancements over 550 mode:

- Deeper FIFO size
- Automatic RTS/CTS out-of-band flow control
- Sleep mode
- Automatic in-bank flow control
- Special character detection
- IRDA-format transmit and receive mode
- Transmit trigger levels
- Optional clock prescaler

950 Mode

The additional features of 950 mode apply only when UART is in Enhanced mode (EFR[4] = 1). FCR[0] set in Enhanced mode enables the 128 Bytes FIFO mode.

Configuration of the UART in 950 Mode is identical with the 650 Mode. Additional specific features of 950 Mode's, are enabled using the Additional Control Register ACR. In addition to larger FIFO's, higher baud rates the enhancements of 950 over 650 mode are:

- Selectable arbitrary trigger levels for the receiver and transmitter FIFO interrupts
- Improved automatic flow control using selectable arbitrary thresholds
- DSR/DTR automatic flow control
- Transmitter and receiver can be optionally disabled
- Software reset of device
- Readable FIFO fill levels
- Optional generation of an RS-485 buffer enable signal
- Four-byte device identification
- Readable status for automatic in-band and out-of-band flow control
- External 1x clock modes
- Flexible M N/8 clock prescaler
- 9-bit data mode

The 950 trigger levels are enabled when ACR[5] is set (FCR[7:4] are ignored). The arbitrary trigger levels can be defined in RTL, TTL, FCL and FCH registers. The Additional Status Register (ASR) offers flow control status for the local and remote transmitters. FIFO levels are readable using RFL and TFL registers.

The user may apply an external 1x (or Nx) clock for the transmitter and receiver to the RI and DSR pins respectively. The transmitter clock may be asserted on the DTR pin. The external clock options are selected through the CKS register.

It is also possible to define the over-sampling rate used by the transmitter and receiver clocks. The 450/550/750 and compatible devices employ 16 times over-sampling . There are 16 clock cycles per bit. The UART can employ over-sampling rate from 4 to 16 by programming the TCR register. This allows the data rates to be increased. Default value after reset for this register is 0x00, which corresponds to a 16 cycle sampling clock. Writing 0x01, 0x02 or 0x03 will also result in 16 cycle sampling clock. To program the value to any value from 4 to 15 it is necessary to write this value into TCR, to set the device to a 13 cycle sampling clock it would be necessary to write 0x0D to TCR.

The UART also offers 9-bit data frames for multi-drop industrial applications.

9.3 STANDARD 550 COMPATIBLE REGISTERS

9.3.1 UART_RBR - Receiver Buffer Register (address offset: 0x00 and LCR[7] = 0)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	DATA	RO	8'h00	FIFO Data Read from RX Buffer

Table 9-3 - UART_RBR - Receiver Buffer Register

9.3.2 UART_THR - Transmitter Holding Register (address offset: 0x00 and LCR[7] = 0)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	DATA	WO	8'h00	FIFO Data Write to TX Buffer

Table 9-4 - UART_THR - Transmitter Holding Register

9.3.3 UART_DIV_LSB - Divisor LSB Register (address offset: 0x00 and LCR[7] = 1)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	DATA	WO	8'h00	The 8 least-significant bits (LSBs) of the 16-bit divisor for generation of the baud clock in the baud rate generator. BaudRate = InputClock/ (SC * Divisor * prescaler)

Table 9-5 - UART_DIV_LSB - Divisor LSB Register

9.3.4 UART_DIV_MSB - Divisor MSB Register (address offset: 0x01 and LCR[7] = 1)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	DATA	WO	8'h00	The 8 most-significant bits (MSBs) of the 16-bit divisor for generation of the baud clock in the baud rate generator. BaudRate = InputClock/ (SC * Divisor * prescaler)

Table 9-6 - UART_DIV_MSB - Divisor MSB Register

9.3.5 UART_INT_ENABLE - Interrupt Enable Register (address offset: 0x01)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	CTS_EN	RW	1'h0	Enable CTS interrupt when EFR[4] = 1
6	RTS_EN	RW	1'h0	Enable RTS interrupt (when EFR[4]=1)
5	SC_EN	RW	1'h0	Enable Special Character interrupt Mask or Alternate Sleep Mode
4	SM_EN	RW	1'h0	Enable Sleep Mode
3	MOD_STS_EN	RW	1'h0	Enable Modem Status Interrupt
2	LINE_STS_EN	RW	1'h0	Enable Receiver Line Status Interrupt
1	TX_EMTY_EN	RW	1'h0	Enable Transmitter Holding Register Empty Interrupt
0	RX_AVL_EN	RW	1'h0	Enable Received Data Available Interrupt

Table 9-7 - UART_INT_ENABLE - Interrupt Enable Register

9.3.6 UART_INT_STATUS - Interrupt Status Register (address offset: 0x02)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:6	Reserved	-	-	Reserved
5:4	Interrupt priority (Enhanced mode)	RO	2'h0	<Refer to Table 9-9 below>
3:1	Interrupt priority (All modes)	RO	3'h0	<Refer to Table 9-9 below>
0	Interrupt pending	RO	1'h0	<Refer to Table 9-9 below>

Table 9-8 - UART_INT_STATUS - Interrupt Status Register

In order to provide minimum software overhead during data character transfers, the UART prioritizes interrupts into six levels and records these in the interrupt Status Register. When the CPU accesses the Interrupt status register, the UART freezes all interrupts and indicates the highest priority pending interrupt to the CPU. While this CPU access is occurring, the UART records new interrupt, but do not change its current indication until the access is complete. The table below shows the contents of the Interrupt Status Register.

UART_INT_STATUS [5:0]	Interrupt Function		
	INT TYPE	INT Source	Level
000001	none	No interrupt pending1	-
000110	Receiver Line Status or address-bit detected in 9-bit mode	Overrun Error or Parity Error or Framing Error or Break Interrupt or address-bit detected in 9-bit mode	1
000100	Receiver Data Available	The receiver FIFO level is above the interrupt trigger level	2a
001100	Receiver time-out	There has been no read of UART_RBR or a period of time greater than the time-out period. There has been no new data received and written into the UART_RBR for a period of time greater than the time-out period.	2b
000010	Transmitter THR empty	Transmitter Holding Register Empty	3
000000	Modem status change	Clear to Send or Data Set Ready or Ring Indicator or Data Carrier Detect	4
010000	In-band flow control XOFF or special character (XOFF2) or special character 1,2,3 or 4 or bit 9 set in 9 bit mode	Valid XOFF, valid XOFF2 or matches special character 1,2,3 or 4(only in Enhanced mode)	5
100000	CTS or RTS change of state	When CTS or RTS bits will change	6

Table 9-9 - Interrupt Status Register Software Handling

Notes:
[1] ISR[0] indicates whether any interrupts are pending.
[2] Interrupts of priority levels 5 and 6 cannot occur unless the UART is in Enhanced mode.
[3] ISR[5] is only used in 650 & 950 modes. In 750 mode, it is 0 when FIFO size is 16 and 1 when FIFO size is 128. In all other modes it is permanently set to 0.

9.3.7 UART_FCR - FIFO Control Register (address offset: 0x02)

550 AND 750 MODE

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:6	RCVR_TRIG	WO	2'h0	Receiver FIFO Trigger
5	FIFO_SIZE	WO	1'h0	Enable UART support for 128 Byte deep FIFO's
4:3	Reserved	WO	2'h0	
2	TXMT_RST	WO	1'h0	Transmitter FIFO reset. Writing a 1 to FCR2 clears all bytes in the XMIT FIFO and resets its counter logic to 0. The shift register is not cleared. The 1 that is written to this bit position is self-clearing.
1	RCVR_RST	WO	1'h0	Receiver FIFO reset. Writing a 1 to FCR1 clears all bytes in the RCVR FIFO and resets its counter logic to 0. The shift register is not cleared. The 1 that is written to this bit position is self-clearing.
0	FIFO_EN	WO	1'h0	Receiver and Transmitter FIFO's enable.

Table 9-10 - UART_FCR - FIFO Control Register – 550 mode

This is a write only register at the same location as the ISR (the ISR is a read only register). Readable contents of this register are placed in ICR space on 0x0F offset. This register is used to enable the FIFOs, clear the FIFOs, set the FIFO triggers levels, and select the type of DMA signaling. When changing from the FIFO Mode to UART Mode and vice versa, data is automatically cleared from the FIFOs. This bit must be a 1 when other FCR bits are written to or they will not be programmed.

RCVR TRGIGG(1:0) - are used to set the trigger level for the RCVR FIFO interrupt.

Fcr[7:6]	RCVR FIFO TRIGGER LEVEL	
	Standard FIFO*mode (16 B)	Extended FIFO*mode*(128B)
00	1	1
01	4	32
10	8	64
11	14	112

Table 9-11 - UART_RCVR - FIFO Trigger Level – 550 mode

* - depends on Ext FIFO enable (FCR(5)) bit value

In this mode the transmitter trigger level is equal to 1.

650 MODE

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:6	RCVR_TRIG	WO	2'h0	Receiver FIFO Trigger
5:4	THR_TRIG	WO	1'h0	Transmitter FIFO Trigger
3	Reserved	-	2'h0	-

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
2	TXMT_RST	WO	1'h0	Transmitter FIFO reset. Writing a 1 to FCR2 clears all bytes in the XMIT FIFO and resets its counter logic to 0. The shift register is not cleared. The 1 that is written to this bit position is self-clearing
1	RCVR_RST	WO	1'h0	Receiver FIFO reset. Writing a 1 to FCR1 clears all bytes in the RCVR FIFO and resets its counter logic to 0. The shift register is not cleared. The 1 that is written to this bit position is self-clearing
0	FIFO_EN	WO	1'h0	Receiver and Transmitter FIFO's enable

Table 9-12 - UART_FCR - FIFO Control Register – 650 mode

This is a write only register at the same location as the ISR (the ISR is a read only register). This register is used to enable the FIFOs, clear the FIFOs, set the RCVR FIFO and THR FIFO triggers level, and select the type of DMA signaling. When changing from the FIFO Mode to UART Mode and vice versa, data is automatically cleared from the FIFOs. This bit must be a 1 when other FCR bits are written to or they will not be programmed.

RCVR TRGIGG(1:0) - are used to set the trigger level for the RCVR FIFO interrupt and flow control.

FCR[7:6]	RCVR FIFO TRIGGER LEVEL	
	Lower trigger for flow control	Interrupt trigger and upper trigger for flow control
00	1	16
01	16	32
10	32	112
11	112	120

Table 9-13 - UART_RCVR - FIFO Trigger Level – 650 mode

THR TRGIGG(1:0) - are used to set the trigger level for the XMIT FIFO interrupt.

FCR[5:4]	TRANSMIT INTERRUPT TRIGGER LEVEL
00	16
01	32
10	64
11	112

Table 9-14 - XMIT FIFO Trigger Level

950 MODE

When ACR[5]=1, bits FCR[5:4] and FCR[7:6] are ignored and the transmitter trigger level can be defined by TTL(transmitter) and RTL(receiver) registers. The trigger level determined by TTL and RTL may be from 0 to 127. There are also FCH and FCL registers used for specifying triggers for the flow control feature.

Setting 0x00 to the TTL register causes an interrupt to occur when the FIFO and the transmitter shift register are both empty and the SO is in idle state.

9.3.8 UART_LCR - Line Control Register (address offset: 0x03)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	DLA	RW	1'h0	Divisor Latch Access Bit 0: Receiver and Transmitter Buffers enable 1: Divisor Latch Enable
6	SET_BRK	RW	1'h0	When set the transmitter is switched into break state, The SO Serial Output pin is driven into logic 0 state
5	SET_PARITY	RW	1'h0	Stick Parity 0: Disable Parity Stick 1: Enable Parity Stick When bits 3, 4 and 5 are logic 1 the Parity bit is transmitted and checked as logic 0. If bits 3 and 5 are 1 and bit 4 is logic 0 then the Parity bit is transmitted and checked as logic 1. If bit 5 is logic 0, Stick Parity is disabled.
4	EVEN_PARITY	RW	1'h0	Even Parity Select 0: An odd number of logic ones is checked for in the transmitted and received character 1: An even number of logic ones is checked for in the transmitted and received character
3	PARITY_EN	RW	1'h0	Parity Enable 1: parity enabled 0: parity disabled
2	STOP_BITS	RW	1'h0	Number of STOP bits 0: 1 Stop bit generated 1: 1.5 stop bits generated for 5 data bits or 2 STOP bits generated for 6/7/8 data bits
1:0	WORD_LEN	RW	1'h0	Word Length select bits 00: 5 data bits 01: 6 data bits 10: 7 data bits 11: 8 data bits

Table 9-15 - UART_LCR - Line Control Register

9.3.9 UART_MCR - Modem Control Register (address offset: 0x04)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	BAUD_PSCL*	RW	1'h1	Baud rate prescaler select Writing a 0 to MCR(7) sets the clock divider in the baud generator to 1, else the divider is an M where: M=CPR[7:3].
6	IRDA_MODE*	RW	1'h0	IrDA mode This bit is only available in 650 or 950 mode. A '1' on this bit enables IrDA mode, which transfers received and transmitted data in special format.
5	AFE_XON*	RW	1'h0	XON-any disabled/enabled. Auto Flow Control enable 1: auto flow control enabled 0: disable auto flow control In Enhanced mode this bit is used for enabling the "XON any" feature. This feature allows re-enabling transmission in case of receiving any character in Automatic In-band Flow Control mode

AFE BIT(5)	RTS BIT(1)	FLOW CONFIGURATION

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description		
				1	1	Auto-RTS and Auto-CTS enabled
				1	0	Auto-CTS only enabled
				0	-	Both Auto-RTS and Auto-CTS disabled
4	LOOPBK_EN	RW	1'h0	Enable Loopback bit 1: This bit provides a local loop-back feature for diagnostic testing of the UART		
3	OUT2	RW	1'h0	Output 2 (OUT2) 1: the OUT2 output is forced to a logic 0 0: the OUT2 output is forced to a logic 1		
2	OUT1	RW	1'h0	Output1 (OUT1) 1: the OUT1 output is forced to a logic 0 0: the OUT1 output is forced to a logic 1		
1	RTS	RW	1'h0	Request to send 1: the RTS output is forced to a logic 0 0: the RTS output is forced to a logic 1		
0	DTR	RW	1'h0	Data Terminal Ready 1: the DTR output is forced to a logic 0 0: the DTR output is forced to a logic 1		

*Only 650/950 mode.

Table 9-16 - UART_MCR - Modem Control Register

9.3.10 UART_LSR - Line Status Register (address offset: 0x05)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	RBR_ERR	RO	1'h0	Error in UART_RBR / Error in RCVR FIFO In the UART Mode this is a 0. In the FIFO mode, 1: when there is at least one parity error, framing error or break indication in the FIFO. 0: when LSR is read. In 450 mode this bit is permanently cleared. In 9-bit mode this bit is not affected by LSR[2].
6	TX_EMTY	RO	1'h0	Transmitter Empty 1: whenever the Transmitter Holding Register (THR) and the Transmitter Shift Register are both empty. 0: whenever either the THR or TSR contains a data character. In the FIFO mode 1: whenever the transmitter FIFO and shift register are both empty
5	TXH_EMTY	RO	1'h0	Transmitter Holding Register Empty 1: Transmitter Holding Register is Empty 0: Transmitter Holding Register has data In the FIFO mode, 1: XMIT FIFO is empty 0: at least 1 byte is written to the XMIT FIFO
4	BRK_INT	RO	1'h0	Break Interrupt 1: whenever the received data input is held in the Space (logic 0) state for longer than a full word transmission time (that is, the total time of Start bit, data bits, a Parity and Stop bits). 0: whenever the CPU reads the contents of the Line Status Register. In the FIFO mode this error is associated with the

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
				particular character in the FIFO it applies to. This error is revealed to the CPU when its associated character is at the top of the FIFO. When break occurs only one zero character is loaded into the FIFO. The next character transfer is enabled after SI goes to the mark state and receives the next valid start bit.
3	FRM_ERR	RO	1'h0	Framing Error, indicates that the received character did not have a valid Stop bit. 1: whenever the Stop bit following the last data bit or parity bit is detected as a logic 0 bit (Spacing level). 0: whenever the CPU reads the contents of the Line Status Register. In the FIFO mode this error is associated with the particular character in the FIFO it applies to. This error is revealed to the CPU when its associated character is at the top of the FIFO. The UART will try to resynchronize after a framing error.
2	PRTY_ERR_RX_9BIT	RO	1'h0	Parity Error/ 9-bit of received data in UART-RBR 1: upon detection of a parity error 0: whenever the CPU reads the contents of the Line Status Register. In the FIFO mode this error is associated with the particular character in the FIFO it applies to. This error is revealed to the CPU when its associated character is at the top of the FIFO. In 9-bit mode, this bit is the 9-th bit of the received data, in addition to the 8 bits in UART-RBR.
1	OVRN_ERR	RO	1'h0	Overrun Error 1: upon detection of an overrun condition and reset whenever the CPU reads the contents of the Line Status Register. If the FIFO mode data continues to fill the FIFO beyond the trigger level, an overrun error will occur only after the FIFO is full and the next character has been completely received in the shift register. OVRN_ERR is indicated to CPU as soon as it happens. The character in the shift register is overwritten, but it is not transferred to the FIFO.
0	DATA_RDY	RO	1'h0	Data Ready 1: whenever a complete incoming character has been received and transferred into the Receiver Buffer Register or the FIFO. 0: by reading all of the data in the Receiver Buffer Register or the FIFO

Table 9-17 - UART_LSR - Line Status Register

9.3.11 UART_MSR - Modem Status Register (address offset: 0x06)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	DCD	RO	1'h0	Data Carrier Detect This bit is the complement of the Data Carrier Detect (DCD) input. If bit 4 of the Modem Control Register is set to a 1, this bit is equivalent to OUT 2 in the Modem Control Register.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
6	RI	RO	1'h0	Ring Indicator This bit is the complement of the Ring Indicator (RI) input. If bit 4 of the Modem Control Register is set to a 1, this bit is equivalent to OUT 1 in the Modem Control Register.
5	DSR	RO	1'h0	Data Set Ready This bit is the complement of the Data Set Ready (DSR) input. If bit 4 of the Modem Control Register is set to a 1, this bit is equivalent to DTR in the Modem Control Register.
4	CTS	RO	1'h0	Clear to Send This bit is the complement of the Clear to Send (CTS) input. If bit 4 (LOOPBK_EN) of the Modem control register is set to a 1, this bit is equivalent to RTS in the Modem Control Register.
3	D_DCD	RO	1'h0	Delta Data Carrier Detect 1: indicates that the DCD input to the chip has changed state.
2	TERI	RO	1'h0	Trailing Edge Ring Indicator 1: Indicates that the RI input to the chip has changed from a low to a high state.
1	D_DSR	RO	1'h0	Delta Data Set ready 1: Indicates that the DSR input to the chip has changed state since the last time it was read by the CPU.
0	D_CTS	RO	1'h0	Delta Clear To Send 1: Indicates that the CTS input to the chip have changed state since the last time it was read by the CPU.

Table 9-18 - UART_MSR - Modem Status Register

9.3.12 UART_SPR - SPR Register (address offset: 0x07)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	DATA	RW	8'h00	This is the command port for the indexed control register. Writing and reading to indexed control register is addressed by offset written to this register

Table 9-19 - UART_SPR - SPR Register

9.4 650 COMPATIBLE REGISTERS

To access these registers LCR must be set to 0xBF.

9.4.1 UART_EFR - Enhanced Feature Register (address offset: 0x02)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	CTS_FC	RO	1'h0	1: Automatic CTS flow control enable
6	RTS_FC	RO	1'h0	1: Automatic RTS flow control enable
5	SPL_CHAR	RO	1'h0	1: Special Character Detection mode enable

4	EM	RO	1'h0	1: Enhanced mode enable
3:2	IBT_FCM	RO	1'h0	In-band transmit flow control mode 00: Disable in-band flow control 01: Enable single character in-band transmit flow control. Recognizing XON2 as the XON character and XOFF2 as the XOFF character 10: Enable single character in-band transmit flow control. Recognizing XON1 as the XON character and XOFF1 as the XOFF character 11: Reserved
1:0	IBR_FCM	RO	1'h0	In-band receive flow control mode 00: Disable in-band flow control 01: Enable single character in-band receive flow control. Recognizing XON2 as the XON character and XOFF2 as the XOFF character 10: Enable single character in-band receive flow control. Recognizing XON1 as the XON character and XOFF1 as the XOFF character 11: Reserved

Table 9-20 - UART_EFR - Enhanced Feature Register

9.4.2 UART_XON1 - XON1 Register (address offset: 0x04)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	DATA		8'h00	Value of XON1

Table 9-21 - UART_XON1 - XON1 Register

9.4.3 UART_XON2 - XON2 Register (address offset: 0x05)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	DATA		8'h00	Value of XON2

Table 9-22 - UART_XON2 - XON2 Register

9.4.4 UART_XOFF1 - XOFF1 Register (address offset: 0x06)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	DATA		8'h00	Value of XOFF1

Table 9-23 - UART_XOFF1 - XOFF1 Register

9.4.5 UART_XOFF2 - XOFF2 Register (address offset: 0x07)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	DATA		8'h00	Value of XOFF2

Table 9-24 - UART_XOFF2 - XOFF2 Register

9.5 950 COMPATIBLE REGISTERS

To access these registers ACR[7] must be set to 1.

9.5.1 UART_ASR - Additional Status Register (address offset: 0x01)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	TX_IDLE	RO	1'h0	1: transmitter is idle (transmitter FIFO and shift register are empty) 0: transmitter is transmitting.
6	FIFO_SIZE	RO	1'h0	1: FIFO are 16 deep if FCR[0]=1; 0: FIFO are 128 deep if FCR[0]=1
5	FIFO_SEL	RO	1'h0	Actual state of FIFOSEL pin
4	SPECIAL_CHAR_DETECT	RO	1'h0	1: special character detect and is stored in UART_RBR ; 0: no special character detect The flag is cleared by reading ASR.
3	DTR	RO	1'h0	Complement state of DTR pin
2	RTS	RO	1'h0	Complement state of the RTS pin
1	REMOTE_TX_DSBL	RW	1'h0	1: transmitter has sent an XOFF character 0: the remote transmitter is not disabled by in-band flow control. This bit may be cleared by software to re-enable remote transmitter (XON is sent)
0	TX_DSBL	RW	1'h0	1: transmitter disabled (receiver detect XOFF) 0: transmitter is not disabled by in- band flow control. This bit may be cleared by software to re-enable transmission if it was disabled by in-band flow control.

Table 9-25 - UART_ASR - Additional Status Register

9.5.2 UART_RFL - Receiver FIFO Level Register (address offset: 0x03)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	DATA	RO	8'h00	Number of characters in the receiver FIFO

Table 9-26 - UART_RFL - Receiver FIFO Level Register

Note: Reading from this register requires ACR[7] = 1

9.5.3 UART_TFL - Transmitter FIFO Level Register (address offset: 0x04)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	DATA	RO	8'h00	Number of characters in the transmitter FIFO

Table 9-27 - UART_TFL - Transmitter FIFO Level Register

Note: Reading from this register requires that last value written to LCR was not 0xBF and ACR[7]=1.

9.5.4 UART_ICR - ICR Register (address offset: 0x05)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	DATA	RW	8'h00	Data port to the indexed control register. Writing data to the indexed control register and reading data from the indexed control register is done using this register.

Table 9-28 - UART_ICR - ICR Register

9.6 INDEXED CONTROL REGISTERS

Writing to Indexed Control Registers (ICRs) is addressed by the SPR offset, and data is loaded through the ICR register. Before writing, be sure that the LCR was not loaded with value '0xBF' (it enables access to 650 compatible registers).To write ICRs follow these steps:

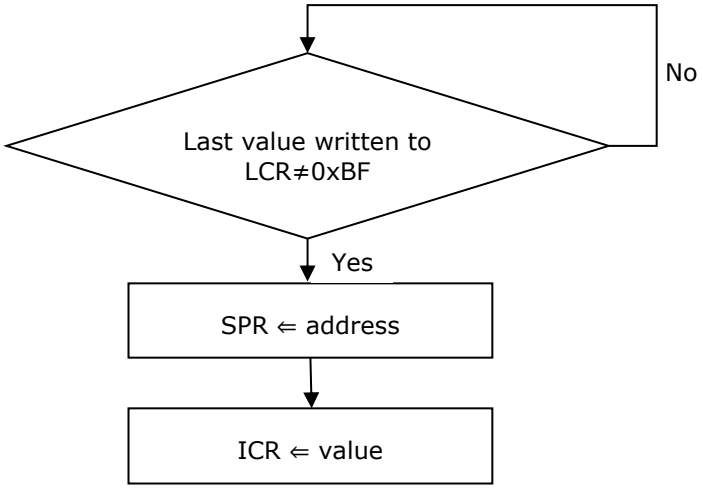

Figure 9.1 - ICR registers write access

Reading from Indexed Control Registers is addressed by the SPR offset, and data is read through the ICR register. Before reading be sure that LCR was not loaded with the value '0xBF' (it enables access to 650 compatible registers).To read from ICRs please follow these steps:

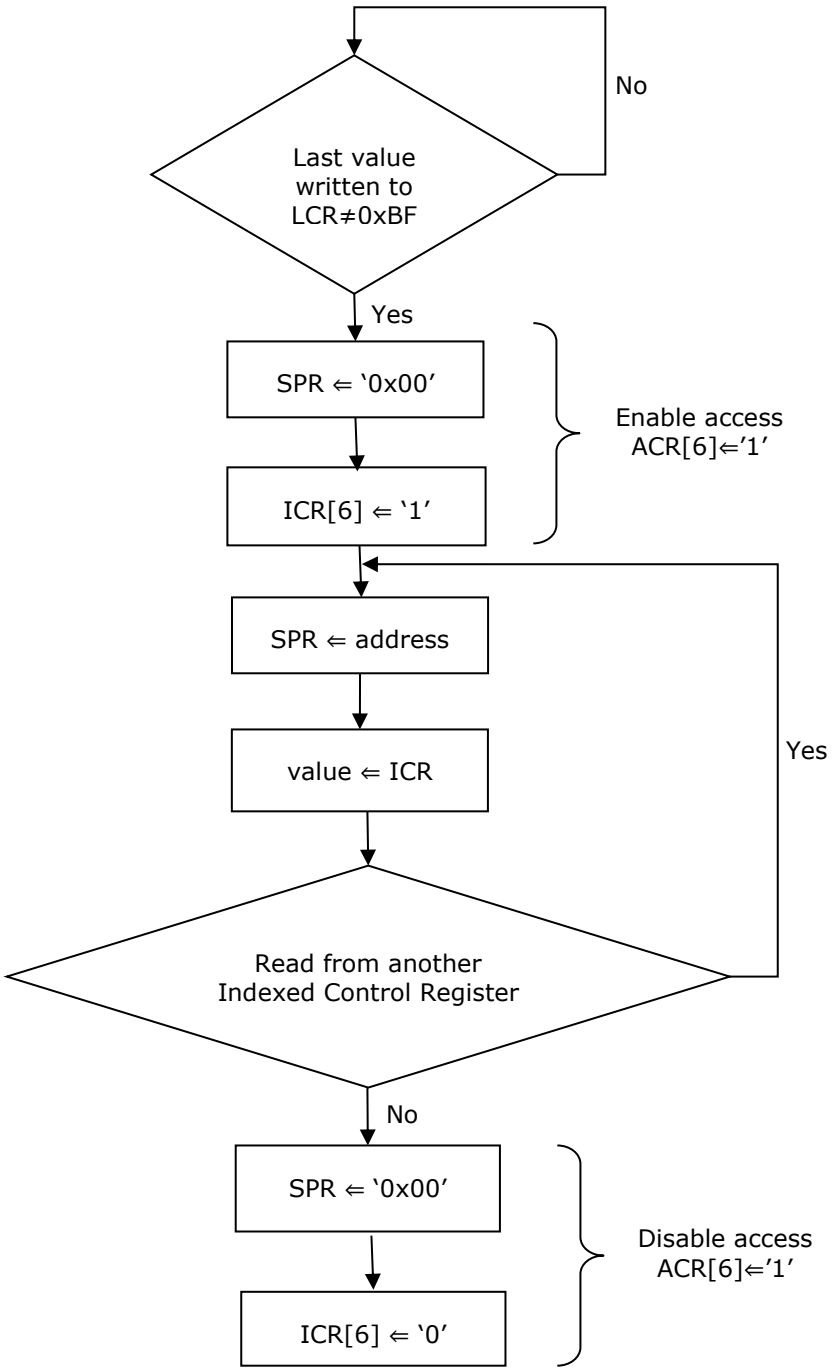

Figure 9.2 - ICR registers read access

9.6.1 UART_ACR - Additional Control Register (SPR offset: 0x00)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	ADL_STS_EN	RW	1'h0	Additional status enable 1: ASR, TFL and RFL are enabled 0: disabled
6	ICR_RD_EN	RW	1'h0	ICR read enable 0: LSR is readable 1: ICR registers are readable
5	950_TLE	RW	1'h0	0: Interrupts and flow control trigger levels are described in the FCR register 1: The triggers are set by RTL, TTL, FCL and FCH registers
4:3	DTR	RW	1'h0	DTR line configuration When CKS[4] or CKS[5] are set, the transmitter 1x clock or the output of the baud rate generator (Nx clock) are asserted on the DTR pin, otherwise the pin is defined as follows: 00: DTR pin is compatible with 450, 550, 650 and 750 (i.e. normal). 01: DTR pin is used for out-of-band flow control. It will be forced high, when the receiver FIFO level reaches the upper flow control trigger (FCH). It will be forced low when the receiver FIFO level falls below the lower flow control trigger (FCL). 10: DTR is configured to drive the active low enable pin of an external RS485 buffer. The pin will be forced low whenever the transmitter is not empty (LSR[6]=0), otherwise the pin is high. 11: DTR is configured to drive the active high enable pin of the external RS485 buffer. The pin will be forced high whenever the transmitter is not empty (LSR[6]=0), otherwise the pin is low.
2	DSR	RW	1'h0	1: enables automatic out-of-band flow control using the DSR pin
1	TX	RW	1'h0	Transmitters disable. 0: Transmitter is enabled. 1: Transmitter is disabled. Data in THR are not transmitted. In-band flow control characters may still be transmitted.
0	RX	RW	1'h0	Receiver disable. 0: Receiver is enabled and data are stored in UART_RBR. 1: Receiver is disabled. The receiver continues to operate as normal to maintain frame synchronization but received data are not stored. In-band control characters continue to be detected and acted upon. Special characters will not be detected.

Table 9-29 - UART_ACR- Additional Control Register

9.6.2 UART_CPR - Clock Prescaler Register (SPR offset: 0x01)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:3	PSCL	RW	5'h00	clock prescaler
2:0	Reserved	-	-	-

Table 9-30 - UART_CPR - Clock Prescaler Register

9.6.3 UART_TCR - Time Clock Register (SPR offset: 0x02)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:4	Reserved	-	-	-
3:0	N_TIMES_CLOCK	RW	4'h00	Bits N-times clock

Table 9-31 - UART_TCR - Time Clock Register

9.6.4 UART_CKS - Clock Select Register (SPR offset: 0x03)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	TX_CLK_MD	RW	1'h0	Transmitter 1x clock mode selector 0: transmitter clock is in Nx clock mode 1: transmitter is in isochronous 1x clock mode
6	TX_CLK_SRC	RW	1'h0	Transmitter clock source selector 0: transmitter clock source is the output of the baud rate generator 1: transmitter uses external clock applied to the RI pin
5:4	TX_CLK_GEN	RW	2'h0	Transmitter 1x clock or baud rate generator output (BAUD_OUT) on the DTR pin. 00: The function of the DTR pin is defined by the setting of ACR[4:3]. 01: The transmitter 1x clock is asserted on the DTR pin and setting of ACR[4:3] is ignored. 10: The output of baud rate generator (Nx clock) is asserted on the DTR pin and the setting of ACR[4:3] is ignored. 11: Reserved
3	RX_CLK_MD	RW	1'h0	Receiver 1x clock mode selector 0: Receiver clock is in Nx clock mode 1: Receiver is in isochronous 1x clock mode
2	BAUD_OUT	RW	1'h0	Disable BAUD_OUT pin 0: BAUD_OUT is enabled and connected to the baud rate generator which is Nx clock. By default it is the 16x clock but using the TCR register it may be configured within a range from 4x to 16x clock. 1: BAUD_OUT is disabled and permanently set to logic 0
1:0	RX_CLK_SRC	RW	2'h0	Receiver Clock source selector 00: The RCLK pin is selected for the receiver clock 01: The DSR pin is selected for the receiver clock 10: The baud rate generator output is selected for the receiver clock (internal BAUD_OUT connection) 11: The transmitter clock is selected for the receiver clock

Table 9-32 - UART_CKS Clock Select Register

9.6.5 UART_TTL - Transmitter Trigger Level Register (SPR offset: 0x04)

This register is located at offset 0x04 of the Indexed Control Register. This register is used for storing the interrupt trigger level for the transmitter in 950 mode (ACR[5] = 1). The interrupt occurs (if enabled) when the transmitter FIFO level falls below the value of the TTL register. If the TTL=0, then an interrupt will occur when both FIFO and shift register are empty and the SO line is marked to be in the idle state.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	Reserved	-	-	-
6:0	TRIG_LVL	RW	7'h0	Transmitter Trigger Level The interrupt trigger level for the transmitter in 950 mode (ACR[5] = 1)

Table 9-33 - UART_TTL - Transmitter Trigger Level Register

9.6.6 UART_RTL - Receiver Trigger Level Register (SPR offset: 0x05)

The RTL register is located at offset 0x05 of the ICR. This register is used for storing the interrupt trigger level for the receiver in 950 mode (ACR[5] = 1). The interrupt occurs (if enabled) when the receiver FIFO level reaches the value stored in this register.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	Reserved	-	-	-
6:0	TRIG_LVL	RW	7'h0	Receiver Trigger Level The interrupt trigger level for the receiver in 950 mode (ACR[5] = 1)

Table 9-34 - UART_RTL - Receiver Trigger Level Register

9.6.7 UART_FCL - Flow Control Level LSB Register (SPR offset: 0x06)

Automatic flow control is supported by FCL and FCH registers. These registers are active only in Enhanced mode, when FCR[6:7] bits are disabled (ACR[5] = 1). The FCL stores the lower trigger level and FCH stores the upper trigger level. Both registers are able to store level values from 0 to 127.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	Reserved	-	-	-
6:0	FLW_CNTL	RW	7'h0	Value of Flow Control LSB

Table 9-35 - UART_FCL - Flow Control Level LSB Register

9.6.8 UART_FCH - Flow Control Level Register MSB (SPR offset: 0x07)

Automatic flow control is supported by FCL and FCH registers. These registers are active only in Enhanced mode, when FCR[6:7] bits are disabled (ACR[5] = 1). The FCL stores the lower trigger level and FCH stores the upper trigger level. Both registers are able to store level values from 0 to 127.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	Reserved	-	-	-
6:0	FLW_CNTL	RW	7'h0	Value of Flow Control MSB

Table 9-36 - UART_FCH - Flow Control Level Register MSB

9.6.9 UART_ID1 - Identification 1 Register (SPR offset: 0x08)

To identify the device type, use ID1,ID2,ID3 and REV registers. In ID1,ID2 and ID3 registers a hexadecimal ID of the device is written. The REV register includes a hardware revision sign.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	DATA	RW	8'h0	Identification value 1

Table 9-37 - UART_ID1 - Identification 1 Register

9.6.10 UART_ID2 - Identification 2 Register (SPR offset: 0x09)

To identify the device type, use ID1,ID2,ID3 and REV registers. In ID1,ID2 and ID3 registers a hexadecimal ID of the device is written.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	DATA	RW	8'h0	Identification value 2

Table 9-38 - UART_ID2 - Identification 2 Register

9.6.11 UART_ID3 - Identification 3 Register (SPR offset: 0x0A)

To identify the device type, use ID1,ID2,ID3 and REV registers. In ID1,ID2 and ID3 registers a hexadecimal ID of the device is written.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	DATA	RW	8'h0	Identification value 3

Table 9-39 - UART_ID3 - Identification 3 Register

9.6.12 UART_REV - Revision Register (SPR offset: 0x0B)

To identify the device type, use ID1,ID2,ID3 and REV registers. In ID1,ID2 and ID3 registers a hexadecimal ID of the device is written.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	DATA	RW	8'h0	hardware revision sign

Table 9-40 - UART_REV - Revision Register

9.6.13 UART_CSR - Channel Software Reset Register (SPR offset: 0x0C)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	DATA	RW	8'h0	00: To reset the UART write 0x00 to the Channel Software Reset register

Table 9-41 - UART_CSR - Channel Software Reset Register

9.6.14 UART_NMR - Nine Bit Mode Register (SPR offset: 0x0D)

To enable 9-bit data mode NMR[0] bit must be logic 0. In this mode data are nine bits wide, and the 9-th bit is stored in LSR[2] for receiving. In transmission the 9-th bit should be written in SPR[0] bit before writing 8-bit data to THR.

In 9-bit mode the setting in LCR[1:0] are ignored. Furthermore as parity is permanently disabled, the setting of LCR[5:3] is also ignored.

In 9-bit mode, in-band flow control is disabled.

When the UART is configured for both Enhanced and 9-bit data mode, setting IER[5] will enable detection of up to four 'address' characters. The eight least significant bits of these characters are stored in XON1, XON2, XOFF1 and XOFF2 registers. The 9-th bit of these characters is stored in NMR[5] to NMR[2].

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:6	Reserved	-	-	-
5	9_SC4	RW	1'h0	9-th bit of special characters
4	9_SC3	RW	1'h0	9-th bit of special characters
3	9_SC2	RW	1'h0	9-th bit of special characters
2	9_SC1	RW	1'h0	9-th bit of special characters
1	9_INT_EN	RW	1'h0	9-bit data mode interrupt enable 0: interrupt for detection of an 'address' character is disabled 1: interrupt for detection of an 'address' character is enabled
0	9_EN	RW	1'h0	9-bit data mode enable

Table 9-42 - UART_NMR - Nine Bit Mode Register

9.6.15 UART_MDM - Modem Disable Mask Register (SPR offset: 0x0E)

MDM is used to mask selected interrupts of modem lines.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:4	Reserved	-	-	-
3	DCD_MASK	RW	1'h0	Delta DCD disable. 0: Enables level 4 interrupt from delta DCD when IER[3]=1 1: Disables level 4 interrupt from delta DCD.
2	RI_MASK	RW	1'h0	Trailing edge RI disable. 0: Enables level 4 interrupt from trailing edge RI when IER[3]=1 1: Disables level 4 interrupt from trailing edge RI.
1	DSR_MASK	RW	1'h0	Delta DSR disable. 0: Enables level 4 interrupt from delta DSR when IER[3]=1 1: Disables level 4 interrupt from delta DSR.
0	CTS_MASK	RW	1'h0	Delta CTS disable. 0: Enables level 4 interrupt from delta CTS when IER[3]=1 1: Disables level 4 interrupt from delta CTS.

Table 9-43 - UART_MDM - Modem Disable Mask Register

9.6.16 UART_RFC - Readable FCR Register (SPR offset: 0x0F)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	FCR	RO	8'h00	read the state of FCR register

Table 9-44 - UART_RFC - Readable FCR Register

9.6.17 UART_GDS - Good Data Status Register (SPR offset: 0x10)

Good data status is set when the following conditions are true:

- ISR reads level 0 (no interrupt), level 2 or 2a (receiver data) or level 3 (THR empty) interrupt.
- LSR[7] is clear.
- LSR[1] is clear.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	DATA	RO	8'h00	contains 'good data status' bit on least significant position.

Table 9-45 - UART_GDS - Good Data Status Register

9.6.18 UART_RSRV_1 - Reserved 1 Register (SPR offset: 0x11)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	Reserved	-	-	-

Table 9-46 - UART_RSRV_1 - Reserved 1 Register

9.6.19 UART_PIDX - Port Index Register (SPR offset: 0x12)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	DATA	RO	8'h00	The value of UART index is 0.

Table 9-47 - UART_PIDX - Port Index Register

9.6.20 UART_CKA - Clock Alteration Register (SPR offset: 0x13)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:5	Reserved	-	-	-
4	CLK_TXRDY	RW	1'h0	Output system clock on TxRdy pin
3	CLK_SEL	RW	1'h0	Use CLKSEL pin for system clock
2	INV_DTR	RW	1'h0	Invert DTR signal
1	INV_TX_CLK	RW	1'h0	Invert internal Tx clock
0	INV_RX_CLK	RW	1'h0	Invert internal Rx clock

Table 9-48 - UART_CKA - Clock Alteration Register

10 Timers and Watchdog

FT93x consists of a 32-bit watchdog timer and four 16-bit users' timers.

The watchdog timer is clocked off the main clock. The watchdog can be initialized with a 5-bit register. The value of this register points to a bit of the 32-bit counter which will be set. A timer decrements and signals an interrupt when it rolls over. Once started and initialized the watchdog cannot be stopped. It can be cleared by writing into a register.

Four user timers can be clocked off the main clock; each timer has its own 16-bit prescaler. These timers can be started, stopped and cleared/initialized. The prescalers can be cleared/initialized the same way. Current values of all four user timers can be read from registers (one at a time - common register, multiplexed access). All timers count up or down and signal an interrupt when rolling over. Each of the timers can be configured to be one-shot or in continuous mode. They are initialized from a common register and only one at a time (multiplexed access).

If the user timer has already started using its prescaler it cannot be cleared and the command is ignored. Each of the prescalers automatically stops after it is cleared individually. It also starts automatically when the corresponding user timer starts using it.

Normal operation:

User timers	**Prescaler**	**Watchdog**
Select the timer to initialize by writing into the **TIMER_SELECT** register. Write initial/final value into **TIMER_WRITE_LS** and **TIMER_WRITE_MS** registers.	The corresponding prescaler is selected by **TIMER_**SELECT register. Write initial value into **TIMER_PRESC_LS** and **TIMER_PRESC_MS** registers.	Write initial value into **TIMER_WDG** register to initialize one of the 32 bits of the timer.
Write into **direction** bit in **TIMER_CONTROL_3** register to select up/down counting.	N/A	N/A
Write into **mode** bit in **TIMER_CONTROL_3** register to select mode.	N/A	N/A
Write into **clear_x** bits in **TIMER_CONTROL_4** register to initialize the timer.	Write into **clear_presc** bit in **TIMER_CONTROL_4** register to initialize the prescaler (if possible)	Write into **clear_wdg** bit in **TIMER_CONTROL_2** register to clear watchdog.
Write into **start_x** bits in **TIMER_CONTROL_1** register to start the timer.	Write into **prescaler_en** bit in **TIMER_CONTROL_2** register to enable prescaler and it will automatically start when the timer/timers using it starts.	Write into **start_wdg** bit in **TIMER_CONTROL_2** register to start watchdog.
Select timer you want to read from by writing into **timer_read_sel** bit in **TIMER_SELECT** register. Current value can be read from **TIMER_READ_LS** and **TIMER_READ_MS** registers.	N/A	N/A
Write into **stop_x** bit in **TIMER_CONTROL_1** register to stop the timer.	N/A	N/A

Table 10-1 - Timers/Watchdog Operation

10.1 Register Summary

Listed below are the registers with their offset from the base address (0x10340). All registers can only be accessed via Byte (8-bit) mode.

Offset	Register	Default Value	Reference
0x00	TIMER_CONTROL_0 - Timers Control Register 0	0x00	Section 14.2.1
0x01	TIMER_CONTROL_1 - Timers Control Register 1	0x00	Section 14.2.2
0x02	TIMER_CONTROL_2 - Timers Control Register 2	0x00	Section 14.2.3
0x03	TIMER_CONTROL_3 - Timers Control Register 3	0x00	Section 14.2.4
0x04	TIMER_CONTROL_4 - Timers Control Register 4	0x00	Section 14.2.5
0x05	TIMER_INT - Timers Interrupt Register	0x00	Section 14.2.6
0x06	TIMER_SELECT - Timers A..D Select Register	0x00	Section 14.2.7
0x07	TIMER_WDG - Watchdog Start Value	0x00	Section 14.2.8
0x08	TIMER_WRITE_LS - Timer A..D Start Value 7:0	0x00	Section 14.2.9
0x09	TIMER_WRITE_MS - Timer A..D Start Value 15:8	0x00	Section 14.2.10
0x0A	TIMER_PRESC_LS - Prescaler Start Value 7:0	0x00	Section 14.2.11
0x0B	TIMER_PRESC_MS - Prescaler Start Value 15:8	0x00	Section 14.2.12
0x0C	TIMER_READ_LS - Timer A..D Current Value 7:0	0x00	Section 14.2.13
0x0D	TIMER_READ_MS - Timer A..D Current Value 15:8	0x00	Section 14.2.14

Table 10-2 - Overview of Timers/Watchdog Registers

10.2 Register Details

10.2.1 TIMER_CONTROL_0 - Timers Control Register 0 (address offset: 0x00)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
1	block_en	RW	1'b0	1: To enable the timer module
0	soft_reset	W1T	1'b0	1: Write 1 to trigger the reset

Table 10-3 - TIMER_CONTROL_0 - Timers Control Register 0

10.2.2 TIMER_CONTROL_1 - Timers Control Register 1 (address offset: 0x01)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	stop_d	W1T	1'b0	1: To trigger stopping timer D
6	stop_c	W1T	1'b0	1: To trigger stopping timer C
5	stop_b	W1T	1'b0	1: To trigger stopping timer B
4	stop_a	W1T	1'b0	1: To trigger stopping timer A
3	start_d	W1T	1'b0	1: To trigger starting timer D
2	start_c	W1T	1'b0	1: To trigger starting timer C
1	start_b	W1T	1'b0	1: To trigger starting timer B
0	start_a	W1T	1'b0	1: To trigger starting timer A

Table 10-4 - TIMER_CONTROL_1 - Timers Control Register 1

10.2.3 TIMER_CONTROL_2 - Timers Control Register 2 (address offset: 0x02)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:4	prescaler_en	RW	4'h0	Enable prescaler bits for timers D/C/B/A respectively
3	wdg_int_ien	RW	1'b0	1: enable watchdog interrupt
2	wdg_int	RW1C	1'b0	1: watchdog interrupt pending
1	clear_wdg	W1T	1'b0	1: To trigger clearing watchdog timer
0	start_wdg	W1T	1'b0	1: To trigger starting watchdog timer

Table 10-5 - TIMER_CONTROL_2 - Timers Control Register 2

10.2.4 TIMER_CONTROL_3 - Timers Control Register 3 (address offset: 0x03)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	direction_d	RW	1'b0	Counter direction bits for timer D 1: Up 0: Down
6	direction_c	RW	1'b0	Counter direction bits for timer C
5	direction_b	RW	1'b0	Counter direction bits for timer B
4	direction_a	RW	1'b0	Counter direction bits for timer A
3	mode_d	RW	1'b0	Continuous/1-shot mode bits for timer D 1: 1-shot 0: Continuous
2	mode_c	RW	1'b0	Continuous/1-shot mode bits for timer C
1	mode_b	RW	1'b0	Continuous/1-shot mode bits for timer B
0	mode_a	RW	1'b0	Continuous/1-shot mode bits for timer A

Table 10-6 - TIMER_CONTROL_3 - Timers Control Register 3

10.2.5 TIMER_CONTROL_4 - Timers Control Register 4 (address offset: 0x04)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
4	presc_clear	W1T	1'b0	1: To trigger clearing prescaler
3	clear_d	W1T	1'b0	1: To trigger clearing timer D
2	clear_c	W1T	1'b0	1: To trigger clearing timer C
1	clear_b	W1T	1'b0	1: To trigger clearing timer B
0	clear_a	W1T	1'b0	1: To trigger clearing timer A

Table 10-7 - TIMER_CONTROL_4 - Timers Control Register 4

10.2.6 TIMER_INT - Timers Interrupt Register (address offset: 0x05)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	timer_int_d_en	RW	1'b0	1: Enable timer D interrupt
6	timer_int_d	RW1C	1'b0	1: Timer D interrupt pending
5	timer_int_c_en	RW	1'b0	1: Enable timer C interrupt
4	timer_int_c	RW1C	1'b0	1: Timer C interrupt pending
3	timer_int_b_en	RW	1'b0	1: Enable timer B interrupt
2	timer_int_b	RW1C	1'b0	1: Timer B interrupt pending
1	timer_int_a_en	RW	1'b0	1: Enable timer A interrupt
0	timer_int_a	RW1C	1'b0	1: Timer A interrupt pending

Table 10-8 - TIMER_INT - Timers Interrupt Register

10.2.7 TIMER_SELECT - Timers A..D Select Register (address offset: 0x06)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
3:2	timer_read_sel	RW	2'h0	Select one of Timers/prescalers A/B/C/D to read (value 0/1/2/3)
1:0	timer_write_sel	RW	2'h0	Select one of Timers/prescalers A/B/C/D to write (value 0/1/2/3)

Table 10-9 - TIMER_SELECT - Timers A..D Select Register

10.2.8 TIMER_WDG - Watchdog Start Value (address offset: 0x07)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
4:0	timer_wdg_write	RW	5'h00	Setting watchdog value 5'h00 — 32'h0000_0001 5'h01 — 32'h0000_0002 … — … 5'h1E — 32'h4000_0000 5'h1F — 32'h8000_0000

Table 10-10 - TIMER_WDG - Watchdog Start Value

10.2.9 TIMER_WRITE_LS - Timer A..D Start Value 7:0 (address offset: 0x08)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	timer_write_7_0	RW	8'h00	Write low byte of the timer start value

Table 10-11 - TIMER_WRITE_LS - Timer A..D Start Value 7:0

10.2.10 TIMER_WRITE_MS - Timer A..D Start Value 15:8 (address offset: 0x09)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	timer_write_15_8	RW	8'h00	Write high byte of the timer start value

Table 10-12 - TIMER_WRITE_MS - Timer A..D Start Value 15:8

10.2.11 TIMER_PRESC_LS - Prescaler Start Value 7:0 (address offset: 0x0A)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	timer_presc_7_0	RW	8'h00	Write low byte of the timer prescaler start value

Table 10-13 - TIMER_PRESC_LS - Prescaler Start Value 7:0

10.2.12 TIMER_PRESC_MS - Prescaler Start Value 15:8 (address offset: 0x0B)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	timer_presc_15_8	RW	8'h00	Write high byte of the timer prescaler start value

Table 10-14 - TIMER_PRESC_MS - Prescaler Start Value 15:8

10.2.13 TIMER_READ_LS - Timer A..D Current Value 7:0 (address offset: 0x0C)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	timer_read_7_0	RO	8'h00	Read low byte of the timer start value

Table 10-15 - TIMER_READ_LS - Timer A..D Current Value 7:0

10.2.14 TIMER_READ_MS - Timer A..D Current Value 15:8 (address offset: 0x0D)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	timer_read_15_8	RO	8'h00	Read high byte of the timer start value

Table 10-16 - TIMER_READ_MS - Timer A..D Current Value 15:8

11 SPI Master

There is a SPI Master module in the device. Listed below are the key features of this SPI master:

- Full duplex synchronous serial data transfer
- Single, Dual and Quad SPI transfer
- Master operation
- Multimaster system supported
- Two modes of operations: SPI mode and FIFO mode
- FIFO size of 64 bytes
- Support up to 8 SPI slaves
- System error detection
- Interrupt generation
- Bit rates generated 1/4, 1/8, 1/16, 1/32, 1/64, 1/128, 1/256, 1/512 of system clock
- Four transfer formats supported

11.1 Register Summary

Listed below are the registers with their offset from the base address (0x10440). All registers can only be accessed via Double-Word (32-bit) mode. However, the least significant byte of the FIFO can be accessed via Byte (8-bit) mode. This facilitates fast byte oriented operations.

Address Offset	Register	Default Value	Reference
0x00	SPIM_CNTL – Control Register	0x04	Section 11.2.1
0x04	SPIM_STATUS – Status Register	0x0C	Section 11.2.2
0x08	SPIM_DATA – Receiver and Transmitter Data Registers	0x00	Section 11.2.3
0x0C	SPIM_SLV_SEL_CNTL – Slave Select Control Register	0xFF	Section 11.2.4
0x10	SPIM_FIFO_CNTL – FIFO Control Register	0x00	Section 11.2.5
0x14	SPIM_TNSFR_FRMT_CNTL – Transfer Format Control Register	0x00	Section 11.2.6
0x18	SPIM_ALT_DATA – Alternative SPI Master Data Register	0x00	Section 11.2.7
0x1C	SPIM_RX_FIFO_COUNT – SPI Master RX FIFO Count Register	0x00	Section 11.2.8
0x20	SPIM_CNTL_2 – Control 2 Register	0x01	Section 11.2.9
0x30	SPIM_STATUS_2 – Status 2 Register	0x45	Section 11.2.10
0x34	SPIM_FIFO_CNTL_2 – FIFO Control 2 Register	0x01	Section 11.2.11
0x38	SPIM_TX_FIFO_COUNT – SPI Master TX FIFO Count Register	0x10	Section 11.2.12
0x3C	SPIM_BAUD – SPI Master Baud Register	0x04	Section 11.2.13

Table 11-1 - Overview of SPI Master Registers

11.2 Register Details

11.2.1 SPIM_CNTL – Control Register (address offset: 0x00)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	SP_IE	RW	1'b0	1: To enable SPI Master interrupt
6	SP_E	RW	1'b0	SPI System enable; 1 to enable.
5	SP_R2	RW	1'b0	See table at SP_R1 and SP_R0
4	MSTR	RW	1'b0	1: To enable this SPI Master
3	CLK_POL	RW	1'b0	Clock polarity select 0: High level; SCK idles Low 1: Low level; SCK idles high
2	CLK_PHA	RW	1'b1	Clock phase 0: Shift Data Out on Falling edge; capture Data In on Rising edge 1: Shift Data Out on Rising edge; capture Data In on Falling edge
1:0	SP_R[1:0]	RW	1'b0	Together with SP_R2, they define the SPI clock rate

SP_R2	SP_R1	SP_R0	System Clock divided by
0	0	0	4
0	0	1	8
0	1	0	16
0	1	1	32
1	0	0	64
1	0	1	128
1	1	0	256
1	1	1	512

Table 11-2 - SPIM_CNTL – Control Register

11.2.2 SPIM_STATUS – Status Register (address offset: 0x04)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	SPI_FLAG	RW	1'b0	Interrupt request; this flag is automatically set to one at the end of an SPI transfer
6	WR_COL	RW	1'b0	Write collision error status flag. The flag is automatically set if the SPDR is written when the TX register is full (in FIFO Mode when the TX FIFO is full)
5	SPI_BIS	RW	1'b0	Indicates end of transmission from SPIM_ALT_DATA register. This flag can generate an interrupt if enabled by SPIM_TNSFR_FRMT_CNTL[6]=1
4	MOD_FAULT	RW	1'b0	SPI mode-fault error status flag. This flag is set if the SS pin goes to active low.
3	THRE	RW	1'b1	SPI in IDLE state with TX FIFO or THR register empty 0: Transmission is in progress

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
2	TX_EMPTY	RW	1'b1	Transmitter Empty 0: TX FIFO contains at least one byte. 1: TX FIFO is empty
1	RX_FIFOFULL	RW	1'b0	Receiver FIFO Full
0	SSC_EN	RW	1'b0	Slave Select Control Enable 1: auto SS assertions enabled 0: auto SS assertions disabled – SS always shows contents of Slave Select Control Register

Table 11-3 - SPIM_STATUS – Status Register

11.2.3 SPIM_DATA – Receiver and Transmitter Data Registers (address offset: 0x08)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	SPDR_RX	RO	8'h00	Data from last Receive operation
7:0	SPDR_TX	WO	8'h00	Data for next Transmit operation

Table 11-4 - SPIM_DATA – Receiver and Transmitter Data Registers

11.2.4 SPIM_SLV_SEL_CNTL – Slave Select Control Register (address offset: 0x0C)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	DATA	RW	8'hFF	SS7-SS0 pin select 0: assigned SS while Master transfer is active 1: SS is forced to logic 1

Table 11-5 - SPIM_SLV_SEL_CNTL – Slave Select Control Register

11.2.5 SPIM_FIFO_CNTL – FIFO Control Register (address offset: 0x10)

<table>
<tr><th>Bit</th><th>Name</th><th>Type</th><th>Default Value</th><th colspan="3">Description</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="8">7:6</td><td rowspan="8">RCVR_TRIG</td><td rowspan="8">RW</td><td rowspan="8">2'h0</td><td></td><td colspan="2">RCVR FIFO Trigger Level</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bits</td><td>Standard FIFO Mode (16W)*</td><td>Extended FIFO Mode (64W)*</td></tr>
<tr><td>00</td><td>01</td><td>01</td></tr>
<tr><td>01</td><td>04</td><td>16</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td>08</td><td>32</td></tr>
<tr><td>11</td><td>14</td><td>56</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">* Depends on SPIM_FIFO_CNTL[5] value</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td>64_BYTE</td><td>RW</td><td>1'b0</td><td colspan="3">1: 64 Byte deep FIFOs enabled</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>TIMEOUT</td><td>RW</td><td>1'b0</td><td colspan="3">1: Enable Timeout interrupt</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>Reserved</td><td>-</td><td>-</td><td colspan="3">-</td></tr>
</table>

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
2	TX_RST	RW	1'b0	Write 1 to TX FIFO and its logic; The shift register is not affected; This bit will clear itself
1	RCVR_RST	RW	1'b0	Write 1 to RX FIFO and its logic; The shift register is not affected; This bit will clear itself
0	FIFO_EN	RW	1'b0	RX and TX FIFO's enable

Table 11-6 - SPIM_FIFO_CNTL – FIFO Control Register

11.2.6 SPIM_TNSFR_FRMT_CNTL – Transfer Format Control Register (address offset: 0x14)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	FIFO_EXT	RW	1'b0	1: Enable FIFO extension and allow 16 bits data transfer to / from FIFO
6	BISINT_EN	RW	1'b0	1: Enable interrupt generation after the transfer is complete from SPIM_ALT_DATA register
5	MULTI_REC	RW	1'b0	1: Allow continuous reception of data without the necessity of loading the TX FIFO
4	Reserved	-	-	-
3	TX_IEN	RW	1'b0	1: Transmitter FIFO Empty interrupt enabled
2	DIR	RW	1'b0	1: Performs multichannel READ (Requires DUAL / QUAD mode to be enabled)
1	QUAD_SPI	RW	1'b0	1: Enable QUAD SPI transfer
0	DUAL_SPI	RW	1'b0	0: Enable DUAL SPI transfer

Table 11-7 - SPIM_TNSFR_FRMT_CNTL – Transfer Format Control Register

11.2.7 SPIM_ALT_DATA – Alternative SPI Master Data Register (address offset: 0x18)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	DATA	RW	8'h00	Alternative SPI Mode Data register. Data transmitted through this register are done as a single channel SPI only regardless of QUAD/DUAL mode setting

Table 11-8 - SPIM_ALT_DATA – Alternative SPI Master Data Register

11.2.8 SPIM_RX_FIFO_COUNT – SPI Master RX FIFO Count Register (address offset: 0x1C)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	Reserved	-	-	-

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
6:0	DATA	RW	7'h00	The number of bytes available in the RX FIFO. Note that the counter can only count up to 63, then rolls back to 0. If it is 0 and the SPI_FLAG bit is 1, it means there are 64 bytes in the FIFO

Table 11-9 - SPIM_RX_FIFO_COUNT – SPI Master RX FIFO Count Register

11.2.9 SPIM_CNTL_2 – Control 2 Register (address offset: 0x20)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	BAUD_REG_EN	RW	1'b0	1 : Use BAUD Register to generate SCK
6:4	Reserved	-	-	-
3	CLSBF	RW	1'b0	1 : LSB (0) of Command is sent/received first; this bit affects only TX operations.
2	LSBF	RW	1'b0	1 : LSB (0) of Data is sent/received first; this bit affects both TX and RX operations.
1	Reserved	-	-	-
0	RX_EMPTY	RO	1'b1	1 : RX data buffer or RX FIFO are empty

Table 11-10 - SPIM_CNTL_2 – Control 2 Register

11.2.10 SPIM_STATUS_2 – Status 2 Register (address offset: 0x30)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	Reserved	-	-	-
6	TEMT	RO	1'b1	1 : Indicates TX FIFO or THR register are empty
5	TXSPIF	RO	1'b0	1 : Indicates that the vacant entries in TX FIFO are more than the TX FIFO Trigger level
4	RX_FULLOVERRIDDEN	RO	1'b0	1 : RX FIFO overflows and data has been overridden. Clear this bit by reading SPDR
3	RX_FIFOFULL	RO	1'b0	1 : RX FIFO is full
2	RX_EMPTY	RO	1'b1	1 : RX FIFO is empty
1	TX_FIFOFULL	RO	1'b0	1 : TX FIFO is full
0	TX_FIFOEMPTY	RO	1'b1	1 : TX FIFO is empty

Table 11-11 - SPIM_STATUS_2 – Status 2 Register

11.2.11 SPIM_FIFO_CNTL_2 – FIFO Control 2 Register (address offset: 0x34)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description		
7:4	Reserved	-	-	-		
3:2	TX_TRIG	RW	2'h0		TX FIFO Trigger Level	
				Bits	Standard FIFO Mode (16W)*	Extended FIFO Mode (64W)*
				00	01	01
				01	04	16
				10	08	32
				11	14	56
				* Depends on SPIM_FIFO_CNTL[5] value		
1	TXTRIG_EN	RW	1'b0	1 : Enable TX TRIGGER LEVEL		
0	RXTRIG_EN	RW	1'b1	1 : Enable RX TRIGGER LEVEL		

Table 11-12 - SPIM_FIFO_CNTL_2 – FIFO Control 2 Register

11.2.12 SPIM_TX_FIFO_COUNT – SPI Master TX FIFO Count Register (address offset: 0x38)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	Reserved	-	-	-
6:0	DATA	RO	7'h10	The number of bytes available in the TX FIFO. Note that the counter can only count up to 63, then rolls back to 0. If it is 0 and the SPI_FLAG bit is 1, it means there are 64 bytes in the FIFO.

Table 11-13 - SPIM_TX_FIFO_COUNT – SPI Master TX FIFO Count Register

11.2.13 SPIM_BAUD – SPI Master Baud Register (address offset: 0x3C)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	BAUD_FACTOR	RO	8'h04	When BAUD REG EN is set, SCK frequency is determined by BAUD FACTOR (divided 2 to divided by 256). When the division factor is odd, the default state of SCK specified by CPOL will be 1 CLK period longer than the other state.

Table 11-14 - SPIM_BAUD – SPI Master Baud Register

12 SPI Slave

There is a SPI slave in the device. Listed below are the key features of the SPI slave:

- Full duplex synchronous serial data transfer
- Two modes of operations: SPI mode and FIFO mode
- FIFO size of 64 bytes
- System error detection
- Interrupt generation
- Four transfer formats supported

12.1 Register Summary

Listed below are the registers with their offset from the base addresses (0x10480). All registers can only be accessed via Double-Word (32-bit) mode. However, the least significant byte of the FIFO can be accessed via Byte (8-bit) mode. This facilitates fast byte oriented operations.

Address Offset	Register	Default Value	Reference
0x00	SPIS_CNTL – Control Register	0x04	Section 12.2.1
0x04	SPIS_STATUS – Status Register	0x0C	Section 12.2.2
0x08	SPIS_DATA – Receiver and Transmitter Data Registers	0x00	Section 12.2.3
0x0C	SPIS_SLV_SEL_CNTL – Slave Select Control Register	-	Section 12.2.4
0x10	SPIS_FIFO_CNTL – FIFO Control Register	0x00	Section 12.2.5
0x14	SPIS_TNSFR_FRMT_CNTL – Transfer Format Control Register	0x00	Section 12.2.6
0x18	SPIS_ALT_DATA – Alternative SPI Slave Data Register	0x00	Section 12.2.7
0x1C	SPIS_RX_FIFO_COUNT – SPI Slave RX FIFO Count Register	0x00	Section 12.2.8
0x20	SPIS_CNTL_2 – Control 2 Register	0x01	Section 12.2.9
0x30	SPIS_STATUS_2 – Status 2 Register	0x45	Section 12.2.10
0x34	SPIS_FIFO_CNTL_2 – FIFO Control 2 Register	0x01	Section 12.2.11
0x38	SPIS_TX_FIFO_COUNT – SPI Slave TX FIFO Count Register	0x10	Section 12.2.12
0x3C	SPIS_BAUD – SPI Slave Baud Register	0x04	Section 12.2.13

Table 12-1 - Overview of SPI Slave Registers

12.2 Register Details

12.2.1 SPIS_CNTL – Control Register (address offset: 0x00)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	SP_IE	RW	1'b0	1: To enable SPI Slave interrupt
6	SP_E	RW	1'b0	SPI System enable; 1 to enable.
5	SP_R2	RW	1'b0	See table at SP_R1 and SP_R0
4	Reserved	-	-	-
3	CLK_POL	RW	1'b0	Clock polarity select 0: High level; SCK idles Low 1: Low level; SCK idles high
2	CLK_PHA	RW	1'b1	Clock phase 0: Shift Data Out on Falling edge; capture Data In on Rising edge 1: Shift Data Out on Rising edge; capture Data In on Falling edge
1:0	SP_R[1:0]	RW	1'b0	Set SP_R2/1/0 value to 0 if the SPI master is operating at high speed. Otherwise, set it to a non-zero value.

Table 12-2 - SPIS_CNTL – Control Register

12.2.2 SPIS_STATUS – Status Register (address offset: 0x04)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	SPI_FLAG	RW	1'b0	Interrupt request; this flag is automatically set to one at the end of an SPI transfer
6	WR_COL	RW	1'b0	Write collision error status flag. The flag is automatically set if the SPDR is written when the TX register is full (in FIFO Mode when the TX FIFO is full)
5	SPI_BIS	RW	1'b0	Indicates end of transmission from the SPIS_ALT_DATA register. This flag can generate an interrupt if enabled by SPIS_TNSFR_FRMT_CNTL[6]=1
4	Reserved	-	-	-
3	THRE	RW	1'b1	SPI in IDLE state with TX FIFO or THR register empty 0: Transmission is in progress
2	TX_EMPTY	RW	1'b1	Transmitter Empty 0: TX FIFO contains at least one byte. 1: TX FIFO is empty
1	RX_FIFOFULL	RW	1'b0	Receiver FIFO Full
0	SSC_EN	RW	1'b0	Slave Select Control Enable 1: auto SS assertions enabled 0: auto SS assertions disabled – SS always shows contents of Slave Select Control Register

Table 12-3 - SPIS_STATUS – Status Register

12.2.3 SPIS_DATA – Receiver and Transmitter Data Registers (address offset: 0x08)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	SPDR_RX	RO	8'h00	Data from last Receive operation
7:0	SPDR_TX	WO	8'h00	Data for next Transmit operation

Table 12-4 - SPIS_DATA – Receiver and Transmitter Data Registers

12.2.4 SPIS_SLV_SEL_CNTL – Slave Select Control Register (address offset: 0x0C)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	Reserved	-	-	-

Table 12-5 - SPIS_SLV_SEL_CNTL – Slave Select Control Register

12.2.5 SPIS_FIFO_CNTL – FIFO Control Register (address offset: 0x10)

<table>
<tr><th>Bit</th><th>Name</th><th>Type</th><th>Default Value</th><th colspan="3">Description</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="7">7:6</td><td rowspan="7">RCVR_TRIG</td><td rowspan="7">RW</td><td rowspan="7">2'h0</td><td></td><td colspan="2">RCVR FIFO Trigger Level</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bits</td><td>Standard FIFO Mode (16W)*</td><td>Extended FIFO Mode (64W)*</td></tr>
<tr><td>00</td><td>01</td><td>01</td></tr>
<tr><td>01</td><td>04</td><td>16</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td>08</td><td>32</td></tr>
<tr><td>11</td><td>14</td><td>56</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">* Depends on SPIS_FIFO_CNTL[5] value</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td>64_BYTE</td><td>RW</td><td>1'b0</td><td colspan="3">1: 64 Byte deep FIFOs enabled</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>TIMEOUT</td><td>RW</td><td>1'b0</td><td colspan="3">1: Enable Timeout interrupt</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>Reserved</td><td>-</td><td>-</td><td colspan="3">-</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>TX_RST</td><td>RW</td><td>1'b0</td><td colspan="3">Write 1 to TX FIFO and its logic; The shift register is not affected; This bit will clear itself</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>RCVR_RST</td><td>RW</td><td>1'b0</td><td colspan="3">Write 1 to RX FIFO and its logic; The shift register is not affected; This bit will clear itself</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>FIFO_EN</td><td>RW</td><td>1'b0</td><td colspan="3">RX and TX FIFO's enable</td></tr>
</table>

Table 12-6 - SPIS_FIFO_CNTL – FIFO Control Register

12.2.6 SPIS_TNSFR_FRMT_CNTL – Transfer Format Control Register (address offset: 0x14)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	FIFO_EXT	RW	1'b0	1: Enable FIFO extension and allow 16 bits data transfer to / from FIFO
6	BISINT_EN	RW	1'b0	1: Enable interrupt generation after transfer is complete from the SPIS_ALT_DATA register
5	MULTI_REC	RW	1'b0	1: Allow continuous reception of data without the necessity of loading the TX FIFO
4	Reserved	-	-	-
3	TX_IEN	RW	1'b0	1: Transmitter FIFO Empty interrupt enabled
2:0	Reserved	-	-	-

Table 12-7 - SPIS_TNSFR_FRMT_CNTL – Transfer Format Control Register

12.2.7 SPIS_ALT_DATA – Alternative SPI Slave Data Register (address offset: 0x18)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	DATA	RW	8'h00	Alternative SPI Mode Data register. Data transmitted through this register are done as a single channel SPI only, regardless of QUAD/DUAL mode setting

Table 12-8 - SPIS_ALT_DATA – Alternative SPI Slave Data Register

12.2.8 SPIS_RX_FIFO_COUNT – SPI Slave RX FIFO Count Register (address offset: 0x1C)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	DATA	RW	8'h00	The number of bytes available in the RX FIFO. Note that the counter can only count up to 63, then rolls back to 0. If it is 0 and SPI_FLAG bit is 1, it means there are 64 bytes in the FIFO

Table 12-9 - SPIS_RX_FIFO_COUNT – SPI Slave RX FIFO Count Register

12.2.9 SPIS_CNTL_2 – Control 2 Register (address offset: 0x20)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	BAUD_REG_EN	RW	1'b0	1 : Use BAUD Register to generate SCK
6:4	Reserved	-	-	-
3	CLSBF	RW	1'b0	1 : LSB (0) of Command is sent/received first; this bit affects only TX operations.
2	LSBF	RW	1'b0	1 : LSB (0) of Data is sent/received first; this bit affects both TX and RX operations.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
1	Reserved	-	-	-
0	RX_EMPTY	RO	1'b1	1 : RX data buffer or RX FIFO are empty

Table 12-10 - SPIS_CNTL_2 – Control 2 Register

12.2.10 SPIS_STATUS_2 – Status 2 Register (address offset: 0x30)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	Reserved	-	-	-
6	TEMT	RO	1'b1	1 : Indicates TX FIFO or THR register are empty
5	TXSPIF	RO	1'b0	1 : Indicates that the vacant entries in TX FIFO are more than the TX FIFO Trigger level
4	RX_FULLOVERRIDDEN	RO	1'b0	1 : RX FIFO overflows and data has been overridden. Clear this bit by reading SPDR
3	RX_FIFOFULL	RO	1'b0	1 : RX FIFO is full
2	RX_EMPTY	RO	1'b1	1 : RX FIFO is empty
1	TX_FIFOFULL	RO	1'b0	1 : TX FIFO is full
0	TX_FIFOEMPTY	RO	1'b1	1 : TX FIFO is empty

Table 12-11 - SPIS_STATUS_2 – Status 2 Register

12.2.11 SPIS_FIFO_CNTL_2 – FIFO Control 2 Register (address offset: 0x34)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description		
7:4	Reserved	-	-	-		
3:2	TX_TRIG	RW	2'h0		TX FIFO Trigger Level	
				Bits	Standard FIFO Mode (16W)*	Extended FIFO Mode (64W)*
				00	01	01
				01	04	16
				10	08	32
				11	14	56
				* Depends on SPIS_FIFO_CNTL[5] value		
1	TXTRIG_EN	RW	1'b0	1 : Enable TX TRIGGER LEVEL		
0	RXTRIG_EN	RW	1'b1	1 : Enable RX TRIGGER LEVEL		

Table 12-12 - SPIS_FIFO_CNTL_2 – FIFO Control 2 Register

12.2.12 SPIS_TX_FIFO_COUNT – SPI Slave TX FIFO Count Register (address offset: 0x38)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	Reserved	-	-	-
6:0	DATA	RO	7'h10	The number of bytes available in the TX FIFO. Note that the counter can only count up to 63, then rolls back to 0. If it is 0 and the SPI_FLAG bit is 1, it means there are 64 bytes in the FIFO

Table 12-13 - SPIS_TX_FIFO_COUNT – SPI Slave TX FIFO Count Register

12.2.13 SPIS_BAUD – SPI Slave Baud Register (address offset: 0x3C)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	BAUD_FACTOR	RO	8'h04	When BAUD REG EN is set, SCK frequency is determined by BAUD FACTOR (divided 2 to divided by 256). When the division factor is odd, the default state of SCK specified by CPOL will be 1 CLK period longer than the other state

Table 12-14 - SPIS_BAUD – SPI Slave Baud Register

13 I²C Master

The I²C Master conforms to v2.1 and v3.0 of the I²C specification.

Listed below are the key features supported by the I²C master:

- Supports Standard Speed Mode (up to 100kb/s)
- Supports Fast mode (up to 400kb/s)
- Supports Fast-plus mode (up to 1Mb/s)
- Supports High-speed mode (up to 3.4Mb/s)
- Performs arbitration and clock synchronisation
- Supports multi-master systems
- Supports both 7-bit and 10-bit address modes
- Supports interrupt generation
- Supports FIFO mode

13.1 Register Summary

Listed below are the registers with their offset from the base address (0x10500). All registers can only be accessed via Byte (8-bit) mode.

Address Offset	Register	Default Value	Reference
0x00	I2CM_SLV_ADDR - Slave Address Register	0x00	Section 18.2.1
0x01	I2CM_CNTL - Control Register	0x00	Section 18.2.2
0x01	I2CM_STATUS - Status Register	0x20	Section 18.2.3
0x02	I2CM_DATA - Receive / Transmit Data Register	0x00	Section 18.2.4
0x03	I2CM_TIME_PERIOD - Timer Period Register	0x01	Section 18.2.5
0x03	I2CM_HS_TIME_PERIOD - High Speed Timer Period Register	0x01	Section 18.2.6
0x04	I2CM_FIFO_LEN - FIFO Mode Byte Length	0x00	Section 18.2.7
0x05	I2CM_FIFO_INT_ENABLE - FIFO Mode Interrupt Enable	0x00	Section 18.2.8
0x06	I2CM_FIFO_INT_PEND - FIFO Mode Interrupt Pending	0x00	Section 18.2.9
0x07	I2CM_FIFO_DATA - FIFO Data Register	0x00	Section 18.2.10
0x08	I2CM_TRIG - Trigger Register	0x00	Section 18.2.11

Table 13-1 - Overview of I2C Master Registers

13.2 Register Details

13.2.1 I2CM_SLV_ADDR – Slave Address Register (address offset: 0x00)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:1	SLV_ADDR	RW	7'h00	This is 7-bit address bits
0	RX_OP	RW	1'b0	0: next operation is a transmission 1: next operation is a reception

Table 13-2 - I2CM_SLV_ADDR – Slave Address Register

13.2.2 I2CM_CNTL – Control Register (address offset: 0x01)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	I2C_RST	WO	1'b0	Resets the whole I^2C Master controller.
6	SLV_RST	WO	1'b0	If set together with the RUN bit, the master will generate 9 I^2C clocks without generating the START condition to recover a blocking Slave device to a known state. A STOP condition will be generated. This bit will be automatically cleared.
5	ADDR	WO	1'b0	Setting this together with the RUN bit will cause the generation of a START condition and transmission of a Slave address.
4	HS	WO	1'b0	Setting this together with the RUN bit switches the Bus controller into high-speed mode.
3	ACK	WO	1'b0	This bit should normally be set when the Master is in the receiver mode to generate ACK. It must be cleared when the master requires no further data from the Slave transmitter.
2	STOP	WO	1'b0	Setting this will cause the STOP condition to be generated.
1	START	WO	1'b0	Setting this will cause the START or Repeated START condition to be generated.
0	RUN	WO	1'b0	Setting this will cause the Bus controller to be active.

Table 13-3 - I2CM_CNTL – Control Register

13.2.3 I2CM_STATUS – Status Register (address offset: 0x01)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	Reserved	-	-	-
6	BUS_BUSY	RO	1'b0	1: indicates the Bus is Busy, and access is not possible. It's reset by START/STOP conditions.
5	I2C_IDLE	RO	1'b1	1: indicates the Bus controller is in the IDLE state.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
4	ARB_LOST	RO	1'b0	1: indicates that during the last operation the Bus controller lost the arbitration
3	DATA_ACK	RO	1'b0	1: indicates that during the last transmit operation data wasn't acknowledged.
2	ADDR_ACK	RO	1'b0	1: indicates that during the last operation the slave address wasn't acknowledged.
1	I2C_ERR	RO	1'b0	1: indicates an error occurred during the last operation – ARB_LOST, DATA_ACK or ADDR_ACK
0	I2C_BUSY	RO	1'b0	1: indicates that the Bus controller is receiving / transmitting data on the bus; other status bits of the Status register are not valid.

Table 13-4 - I2CM_STATUS – Status Register

13.2.4 I2CM_DATA – Receive / Transmit Data Register (address offset: 0x02)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	DATA	RW	8'h00	When read, this is the data received in the last transaction. When written, this is the data to be transmitted in the next transaction.

Table 13-5 - I2CM_DATA – Receive / Transmit Data Register

13.2.5 I2CM_TIME_PERIOD – Timer Period Register (address offset: 0x03)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	TIME_ENB	RW	1'b0	Cleared to use this register.
6:0	SCL_LP	RW	7'h01	Frequency scaler used in STANDARD_FAST and FAST_PLUS modes. The value is appended with a 1 at LSB to make it 8-bit. SCL_PERIOD = (SCL_LP[6] * 128 + SCL_LP[5] * 64 + SCL_LP[4] * 32 + SCL_LP[3] * 16 + SCL_LP[2] * 8 + SCL_LP[1] * 4 + SCL_LP[0] * 2 + 1) * CLK_PERIOD

Table 13-6 - I2CM_TIME_PERIOD – Timer Period Register

13.2.6 I2CM_HS_TIME_PERIOD – High Speed Timer Period Register (address offset: 0x03)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	TIME_ENB	WO	1'b0	Set to use this register.
6	FAST	WO	1'b0	Set to indicate to the Bus controller to use FAST generic timing parameters.
5	Reserved	-	-	-
4:0	SCL_HP	WO	1'b1	Frequency scalar used in FAST mode. The value is appended with a 1 at the LSB, and prepended with 2

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
				0's to make it 8-bit. SCL_PERIOD = (SCL_HP[4] * 32 + SCL_HP[3] * 16 + SCL_HP[2] * 8 + SCL_HP[1] * 4 + SCL_HP[0] * 2 + 1) * CLK_PERIOD

Table 13-7 - I2CM_HS_TIME_PERIOD – High Speed Timer Period Register

13.2.7 I2CM_FIFO_LEN – FIFO Mode Byte Length (address offset: 0x04)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	FIFO_BL	RW	8'h00	Number of bytes (FIFO_BL + 1) to transmit / receive when FIFO mode is enabled

Table 13-8 - I2CM_FIFO_LEN – FIFO Mode Byte Length

13.2.8 I2CM_FIFO_INT_ENABLE – FIFO Mode Interrupt Enable (address offset: 0x05)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	DONE	RW	1'b0	FIFO_BL operation completed Interrupt
6	I2C_INT	RW	1'b0	I2C Interrupt
5	RX_FULL	RW	1'b0	RX FIFO Full interrupt enable
4	RX_HALF	RW	1'b0	RX FIFO Half Full interrupt enable
3	RX_EMPTY	RW	1'b0	RX FIFO Empty interrupt enable
2	TX_FULL	RW	1'b0	TX FIFO Full interrupt enable
1	TX_HALF	RW	1'b0	TX FIFO Half Full interrupt enable
0	TX_EMPTY	RW	1'b0	TX FIFO Empty interrupt enable

Table 13-9 - I2CM_FIFO_INT_ENABLE – FIFO Mode Interrupt Enable

13.2.9 I2CM_FIFO_INT_PEND – FIFO Mode Interrupt Pending (address offset: 0x06)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	DONE	RW1C	1'b0	FIFO_BL operation complete interrupt pending
6	I2C_INT	RW1C	1'b0	I2C Interrupt pending
5	RX_FULL	RW1C	1'b0	RX FIFO Full interrupt pending

4	RX_HALF	RW1C	1'b0	RX FIFO Half Full interrupt pending
3	RX_EMPTY	RW1C	1'b0	RX FIFO Empty interrupt pending
2	TX_FULL	RW1C	1'b0	TX FIFO Full interrupt pending
1	TX_HALF	RW1C	1'b0	TX FIFO Half Full interrupt pending
0	TX_EMPTY	RW1C	1'b0	TX FIFO Empty interrupt pending

Table 13-10 - I2CM_FIFO_INT_PEND – FIFO Mode Interrupt Pending

13.2.10 I2CM_FIFO_DATA - FIFO Data Register (address offset: 0x07)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	FIFO_DATA	RW	8'h00	FIFO Data Read from RX Buffer

Table 13-11 - I2CM_FIFO_DATA - FIFO Data Register

13.2.11 I2CM_TRIG - Trigger Register (address offset: 0x08)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	RX_OP	RW	1'b0	A write to this register triggers the FIFO mode operation. Set this bit to 1 for RX, and 0 for TX FIFO operations. The operation will end when FIFO_BL expires.
6:0	Reserved	-	-	-

Table 13-12 - I2CM_TRIG - Trigger Register

14 I²C Slave

The I²C Slave conforms to v2.1 and v3.0 of the I²C specification.

Listed below are the key features supported by the I²C slave:

- Supports Standard Speed Mode (up to 100kb/s)
- Supports Fast mode (up to 400kb/s)
- Supports Fast-plus mode (up to 1Mb/s)
- Supports High-speed mode (up to 3.4Mb/s)
- Performs arbitration and clock synchronisation
- Supports interrupt generation
- Supports FIFO mode

14.1 Register Summary

Listed below are the registers with their offset from the base address (0x10510). All registers can only be accessed via Byte (8-bit) mode.

Address Offset	Register	Default Value	Reference
0x00	I2CS_OWN_ADDR - Own Address Register	0x00	Section 14.2.1
0x01	I2CS_CNTL - Control Register	0x00	Section 14.2.2
0x01	I2CS_STATUS - Status Register	0x00	Section 14.2.3
0x02	I2CS_DATA - Receive / Transmit Data Register	0x00	Section 14.2.4
0x04	I2CS_FIFO_LEN - FIFO Mode Byte Length	0x00	Section 14.2.5
0x05	I2CS_FIFO_INT_ENABLE - FIFO Mode Interrupt Enable	0x00	Section 14.2.6
0x06	I2CS_FIFO_INT_PEND - FIFO Mode Interrupt Pending	0x00	Section 14.2.7
0x07	I2CS_FIFO_DATA - FIFO Data Register	0x00	Section 14.2.8
0x08	I2CS_TRIG - Trigger Register	0x00	Section 14.2.9

Table 14-1 - Overview of I2C Master Registers

14.2 Register Details

14.2.1 I2CS_OWN_ADDR – Own Address Register (address offset: 0x00)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	Reserved	-	-	-

6:0	OWN_ADDR	RW	7'h00	This is the seven address bits of the Slave controller.

Table 14-2 - I2CS_OWN_ADDR – Own Address Register

14.2.2 I2CS_CNTL – Control Register (address offset: 0x01)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	I2C_RST	WO	1'b0	Setting this bit will reset the whole Slave controller.
6	DEV_ACTV	RW	1'b0	Device Active 1: enables the Slave controller operations 0: disables the Slave controller operations Writing a 1 sets DEV_ACTV to 1 immediately while writing 0 will not be effective immediately if there is any on-going transmission. It's suggested that this bit is polled if a 0 is written.
5:4	Reserved	-	-	-
3	REC_FIN_CLR	WO	1'b0	Writing 1 to this bit clears REC_FIN bit from the Status register.
2	SEND_FIN_CLR	WO	1'b0	Writing 1 to this bit clears SEND_FIN bit from the Status register.
1:0	Reserved	-	-	-

Table 14-3 - I2CS_CNTL – Control Register

14.2.3 I2CS_STATUS – Status Register (address offset: 0x01)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	Reserved	-	-	-
6	DEV_ACTV	RW	1'b0	Device Active 1: enables the Slave controller operations 0: disables the Slave controller operations Writing a 1 set DEV_ACTV to 1 immediately while writing 0 will not be effective immediately if there is any on-going transmission. It's suggested that this bit is polled if a 0 is written.
5	Reserved	-	-	-
4	BUS_ACTV	RO	1'b0	1: indicates that there is transmission: send, receive or own address detection in progress
3	REC_FIN	RO	1'b0	1: indicates that the Master has ended the transmit operation. It means no more RX_REQ will be set during this single or bursts receive operation. It is cleared by writing 1 to REC_FINCLR bit in the Control register.
2	SEND_FIN	RO	1'b0	1: indicates that the Master has ended the receive operation. It means no more TX_REQ will be set during this single or burst send operation. It is cleared by writing 1 to SEND_FINCLR bit in the Control register.
1	TX_REQ	RO	1'b0	1: indicates the Slave controller is addressed as transmitter and requires data from the host device.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
0	RX_REQ	RO	1'b0	1: indicates the Slave controller has received data from the Master. It is automatically cleared by reading of I2CS_DATA.

Table 14-4 - I2CS_STATUS – Status Register

14.2.4 I2CS_DATA – Receive / Transmit Data Register (address offset: 0x02)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	DATA	RW	8'h00	When read, this is the data received in the last transaction. When written, this is the data to be transmitted in the next transaction.

Table 14-5 - I2CS_DATA – Receive / Transmit Data Register

14.2.5 I2CS_FIFO_LEN – FIFO Mode Byte Length (address offset: 0x04)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	FIFO_BL	RW	8'h00	Number of bytes (FIFO_BL + 1) to transmit / receive when FIFO mode is enabled

Table 14-6 - I2CS_FIFO_LEN – FIFO Mode Byte Length

14.2.6 I2CS_FIFO_INT_ENABLE – FIFO Mode Interrupt Enable (address offset: 0x05)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	DONE	RW	1'b0	FIFO_BL operation completed Interrupt
6	I2C_INT	RW	1'b0	I2C Interrupt
5	RX_FULL	RW	1'b0	RX FIFO Full interrupt enable
4	RX_HALF	RW	1'b0	RX FIFO Half Full interrupt enable
3	RX_EMPTY	RW	1'b0	RX FIFO Empty interrupt enable
2	TX_FULL	RW	1'b0	TX FIFO Full interrupt enable
1	TX_HALF	RW	1'b0	TX FIFO Half Full interrupt enable
0	TX_EMPTY	RW	1'b0	TX FIFO Empty interrupt enable

Table 14-7 - I2CS_FIFO_INT_ENABLE – FIFO Mode Interrupt Enable

14.2.7 I2CS_FIFO_INT_PEND – FIFO Mode Interrupt Pending (address offset: 0x06)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	DONE	RW1C	1'b0	FIFO_BL operation complete interrupt pending
6	I2C_INT	RW1C	1'b0	I2C Interrupt pending
5	RX_FULL	RW1C	1'b0	RX FIFO Full interrupt pending
4	RX_HALF	RW1C	1'b0	RX FIFO Half Full interrupt pending
3	RX_EMPTY	RW1C	1'b0	RX FIFO Empty interrupt pending
2	TX_FULL	RW1C	1'b0	TX FIFO Full interrupt pending
1	TX_HALF	RW1C	1'b0	TX FIFO Half Full interrupt pending
0	TX_EMPTY	RW1C	1'b0	TX FIFO Empty interrupt pending

Table 14-8 - I2CS_FIFO_INT_PEND – FIFO Mode Interrupt Pending

14.2.8 I2CS_FIFO_DATA - FIFO Data Register (address offset: 0x07)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	FIFO_DATA	RO	8'h00	FIFO Data Read from the RX Buffer

Table 14-9 - I2CS_FIFO_DATA - FIFO Data Register

14.2.9 I2CS_TRIG - Trigger Register (address offset: 0x08)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	RX_OP	RW	1'b0	A write to this register triggers the FIFO mode operation. Set this bit to 1 for RX, and 0 for TX FIFO operations. The operation will end when FIFO_BL expires.
6:0	Reserved	-	-	-

Table 14-10 - I2CS_TRIG - Trigger Register

15 RTC

This is a Real Time Clock (RTC) running off a dedicated 32.768 kHz oscillator. It is powered by a 1.2V input (VBAT). If power is lost to VBAT, all RTC register values will reset to their default values. To maintain continuous power to VBAT refer to BRT_AN_004_FT930_RTC External Power Switch Circuit. This application note shows an example battery backup change-over circuit.

15.1 Register Summary

Listed below are the registers with their offset from the base address (0x10400). All registers can be accessed via Double-Word (32-bit) mode.

Address Offset	Register	Default Value	Reference
0x00	RTC_TIME – Contains second, minute and hour	0x0000 0000	Section 16.2.1
0x04	RTC_DATE – Contains day, date, month, and year	0x0001 0101	Section 16.2.2
0x08	RTC_AALARM1 – Time-of-Day Auto Alarm 1	0x0000 0000	Section 16.2.3
0x0C	RTC_AALARM2 – Time-of-Day Auto Alarm 2	0x0000 0000	Section 16.2.4
0x10	RTC_CTRL – Control Register	0x0000 0000	Section 16.2.5
0x14	RTC_STAT – Status Register	0x0000 0000	Section 16.2.6
0x18	RTC_TRIM_VALUE – Trimming Register	0x03e8 7FFF	Section 16.2.7
0x1C	RTC_SLE_TIME – Sleep Time Register	0x0000 0000	Section 16.2.8
0x20	RTC_SLE_DATE – Sleep Date Register	0x0001 0101	Section 16.2.9
0x24	RTC_COMP_PER – Compare Period Register	0x0000 0000	Section 16.2.10
0x28	RTC_VREF_TRIM – LVREF Trimming Value	0x0000 0003	Section 16.2.11

Table 15-1 - Overview of RTC Registers

15.2 Register Details

15.2.1 RTC_TIME – Time Register (address offset: 0x00)

<table>
<tr><th>Byte\Bit</th><th>7</th><th>6</th><th>5</th><th>4</th><th>3</th><th>2</th><th>1</th><th>0</th><th>Function</th><th>Range</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td colspan="3">10 Seconds</td><td colspan="4">Seconds</td><td>Seconds</td><td>00 – 59</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td colspan="3">10 Minutes</td><td colspan="4">Minutes</td><td>Minutes</td><td>00 – 59</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">2</td><td rowspan="2">0</td><td rowspan="2">1:12
0:24</td><td>0: AM
1: PM</td><td rowspan="2">10
Hours</td><td colspan="4" rowspan="2">Hours</td><td rowspan="2">Hours</td><td rowspan="2">01 – 12
+AM/PM

00 – 23</td></tr>
<tr><td>20 Hours</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>Unused</td><td></td></tr>
</table>

Table 15-2 - RTC_TIME - Time Register

- Address : 0x00
- Type : RW
- Reset Value : 0x0000 0000
- Description : Contains the Second, Minute, Hour counters.

15.2.2 RTC_DATE – Date Register (address offset: 0x04)

Byte\Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	Function	Range
0	0	0	0	0	0	Day			Day	1 – 7
1	0	0	10 Date		Date				Date	01 – 31
2	Century	0	0	10 Month	Month				Month	01 – 12 + Century
3	10 Year				Year				Year	00 – 99

Table 15-3 - RTC_DATE - Date Register

- Address : 0x04
- Type : RW
- Reset Value : 0x0001 0101
- Description : Contains Day, Date, Month, Year counters.

15.2.3 RTC_AALARM1 – Auto Alarm 1 Register (address offset: 0x08)

Byte\Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	Function	Range
0	A1M1	10 Seconds			Seconds				Seconds	00 – 59
1	A1M2	10 Minutes			Minutes				Minutes	00 – 59
2	A1M3	1:12 0:24	0:AM 1:PM 20 Hours	10 Hours	Hours				Hours	01 – 12 +AM.PM 00 – 23
3	A1M4	0:Date 1: Day	10 Date		Day/Date				Date Day	01-07 01-31

Table 15-4 - RTC_AALARM1 – Auto Alarm 1 Register

- Address : 0x08
- Type : RW
- Reset Value : 0x0000 0000
- Description : When counters match the configured values of this register, AALARM1 will be asserted.

DY/!DT (Byte 3 Bit 6)	AALARM1 Register Mask (bit 7)				Alarm Rate
	A1M4	A1M3	A1M2	A1M1	
X	1	1	1	1	Alarm once per second
X	1	1	1	0	Alarm when seconds match
X	1	1	0	0	Alarm when minutes and seconds match
X	1	0	0	0	Alarm when hours, minutes and seconds match
0	0	0	0	0	Alarm when date, hours, minutes and second match
1	0	0	0	0	Alarm when day, hours, minutes and second match

Table 15-5 - Alarm 1 Mask Bits

Note: Configurations not listed in this table result in illogical operation.

15.2.4 RTC_AALARM2 – Auto Alarm 2 Register (address offset: 0x0C)

Byte\Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	Function	Range
0	A2M1	10 Seconds			Seconds				Seconds	00 – 59
1	A2M2	10 Minutes			Minutes				Minutes	00 – 59
2	A2M3	1:12 0:24	0:AM 1:PM 20 Hours	10 Hours	Hours				Hours	01 – 12 +AM.PM 00 – 23
3	A2M4	0:Date 1: Day	10 Date		Day/Date				Date Day	01-07 01-31

Table 15-6 - RTC_AALARM2 – Auto Alarm 2 Register

- Address : 0x0C
- Type : RW
- Reset Value : 0x0000 0000
- Description : When counters match the configured values of this register, AALARM1 will be asserted.

DY/!DT (Byte 3 Bit 6)	AALARM1 Register Mask (bit 7)				Alarm Rate
	A2M4	A2M3	A2M2	A2M1	
X	1	1	1	1	Alarm once per second
X	1	1	1	0	Alarm when seconds match
X	1	1	0	0	Alarm when minutes and seconds match
X	1	0	0	0	Alarm when hours, minutes and seconds match
0	0	0	0	0	Alarm when date, hours, minutes and second match
1	0	0	0	0	Alarm when day, hours, minutes and second match

Table 15-7 - Alarm 2 Mask Bits

Note: Configurations not listed in this table result in illogical operation.

15.2.5 RTC_CTRL – Control Register (address offset: 0x10)

Byte\Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	RFEN	AUCAL	IOSIE	EOSIE	A2IE	A1IE	INTEN	RTCEN
1	Unused						WRST/BS	MARFE
2,3	Unused							

Table 15-8 - RTC_CTRL – Control Register

- Address : 0x10
- Type : RW
- Reset Value : 0x0000 0000
- Description : This register controls the operation of RTC when system power is turned on. In sleep mode, its value is still kept in the Alive module and will be recovered to the Wrapper when the system wakes up. It includes following bits:

- **RTC_CTRL[0] – RTCEN:** RTC Enable bit. When this bit is disabled, INT and ALARMs will be gated to 0, and the RTC counters will be held.
- **RTC_CTRL[1] – INTEN:** Interrupt Enable bit. When this bit is disabled, no interrupt occurs.
- **RTC_CTRL[2] – A1IE:** Alarm 1 Interrupt Enable. ALARM 1 will cause an interrupt if this bit is enabled.
- **RTC_CTRL[3] – A2IE:** Alarm 2 Interrupt Enable. ALARM 2 will cause an interrupt if this bit is enabled.
- **RTC_CTRL[4] – EOSIE/CATIM[0]:** External Oscillator Stop Interrupt Enable. Oscillator Stop will cause an interrupt if this bit is enabled / Calibration Time bit 0
- **RTC_CTRL[5] – IOSIE/CATIM[1]:** Internal Oscillator Stop Interrupt Enable. Auto Detection Oscillator Stop will cause an interrupt if this bit is enabled / Calibration Time bit 1
- **RTC_CTRL[6] – AUCAL:** Write 1 to do auto calibration. The calibration time depends on CATIM[1:0]:
  - 00 : Calibration in 1 second
  - 01 : Calibration in 1 minute
  - 10 : Calibration in 10 minutes
  - 11 : Calibration in 16.67 minutes (1000 seconds)
- **RTC_CTRL[7] – AURFE:** Auto Refresh Enable. When this bit is turned on, time and date counters from Alive will be updated to registers every second.
- **RTC_CTRL[8] – MARFE:** Manual Refresh Enable. Write 1 to this bit to update time and date counters from Alive to Wrapper once. This bit will be cleared automatically after updating. Poll to this bit to get the status of Manual Refresh function. 1: updating, 0: done
- **RTC_CTRL[9] – WRST/BS :**
  - Write 1 to this bit to start writing target registers.
  - Read this bit to check the status. 1: Busy, 0: Ready
  - This bit is auto cleared.

15.2.6 RTC_STAT - Status Register (address offset: 0x14)

Byte\Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Unused	CALINT	IOSINT	EOSINT	A2INT	A1INT	Unused	Unused
1 ,2, 3	Unused							

Table 15-9 - RTC_STAT - Status Register

- Address : 0x14
- Type : RW1C, RO
- Reset Value : 0x0000 0000
- Description : This register contains the status and the interrupt events that cause the interrupts. These events are enabled by respective bits of Control Registers. The user must write 1 to clear these status bits.
  - **Stat[2] – A1INT**: Alarm 1 Interrupt. Set when timers match the value of AAlarm1 Register, an interrupt will be asserted if RtcCtrl[2] – A1IE is set.
  - **Stat[3] – A2INT**: Alarm 2 Interrupt. Set when timers match the value of AAlarm2 Register, an interrupt will be asserted if RtcCtrl[3] – A2IE is set.
  - **Stat[4] – EOSINT**: External Oscillator Stop Interrupt. Set when receiving a rising edge of OSCSTOP input. If RtcCtrl[4] – EOSIE is enabled, an interrupt will be asserted.
  - **Stat[5] – IOSINT**: Internal Oscillator Stop Interrupt. Set when detecting two continuous values are the same after a defined period of time. If RtcCtrl[5] – IOSIE is enabled, an interrupt will be asserted.
  - **Stat[6] – CALINT**: Auto Calibration Interrupt. Set after calibration done.
  - **Stat[7] – BUSY**: Data is transferring, user can't write any data to RTC. This bit is read only.

15.2.7 RTC_TRIM – Trimming Register (address offset: 0x18)

Byte\Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1, 0	TrimVal[15:0]							
2, 3	TrimTim[15:0]							

Table 15-10 - RTC_TRIM – Trimming Value Register

- Address : 0x18
- Type : RW
- Reset Value : 0x03E8 7FFF
- Description : This register contains trimming value and trimming period. After calibrating, the new values will be loaded automatically. The user also can write values to this register.

15.2.8 RTC_SLE_TIME – Sleep Time Register (address offset: 0x1C)

Byte\Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	Function	Range
0	0	10 Seconds			Seconds				Seconds	00 – 59
1	0	10 Minutes			Minutes				Minutes	00 – 59
2	0	1:12 0:24	0: AM 1: PM 20 Hours	10 Hours	Hours				Hours	01 – 12 + AM.PM 00 – 23
3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	Unused	

Table 15-11 - RTC_SLE_TIME – Sleep Time Register

- Address : 0x1C
- Type : RW
- Reset Value : 0x0000 0000
- Description : Contains the Second, Minute, Hour values when system power is turned off.

15.2.9 RTC_SLE_DATE – Sleep Date Register (address offset: 0x20)

Byte\Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	Function	Range
0	0	0	0	0	0	Day			Day	1 – 7
1	0	0	10 Date		Date				Date	01 – 31
2	Century	0	0	10 Month	Month				Month	01 – 12 + Century
3	10 Year				Year				Year	00 – 99

Table 15-12 - RTC_SLE_DATE - Sleep Date Register

- Address : 0x20
- Type : RW
- Reset Value : 0x0001 0101
- Description : Contains Day, Date, Month, Year counters when system power is turned off.

15.2.10 RTC_COMP_PER – Compare Period Register (address offset: 0x24)

Byte\Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	Function
0	Unused					0	0	0	Auto detection is turned off
						0	0	1	Auto detect per 100,000 * pclk_cycle_time
						0	1	0	Auto detect per 1,000,000 * pclk_cycle_time
						0	1	1	Auto detect per 10,000,000 * pclk_cycle_time
						1	0	0	Auto detect per 100,000,000 * pclk_cycle_time
1, 2, 3	Reserved								

Table 15-13 – RTC_COMP_PER - Compare Period Register

- Address : 0x24
- Type : RW
- Reset Value : 0x0000 0000
- Description : This register contains the Oscillator Stop compare period which is automatically detected. Set the compare period within the range of 1ms ~ 2s based on the PCLK cycle time.

15.2.11 RTC_VREF_TRIM – LVREF Trimming Value (address offset: 0x28)

- Address : 0x28
- Type : RW
- Reset Value : 0x0000 0003
- Description : Allow the reference voltage to be accurately trimmed. Only 3 LSB bits are used.

16 PWM

The device supports 8 separate independent PWM channels. All channels share an 8-bit prescaler to scale the system clock frequency to the desired channels.

Each channel has its own 16-bit comparator value. This is the value that would be matched to a preset 16-bit counter. When a channel's 16-bit comparator value matches that of the 16-bit counter, the corresponding PWM channel output will toggle. This 16-bit comparator value will continue to count until it reaches its preset value, and the counter will just roll over.

A special feature allows the 8 channels each to also toggle its own output based on the comparison results of other channels. Hence each channel potentially can have up to 8 toggle edges.

The PWM can be generated as a multi-shot or continuously. When defined as a multi-shot, an interrupt may be generated at the end of the PWM production.

Channels 0 and 1 can double as a stereo 11 kHz or 22 kHz PWM audio channel. Once it's set up, the 16-bit or 8-bit PWM audio data can be downloaded to the PWM's local FIFO which can hold up to 64 stereo or 128 mono audio data. The data will be played back based on the prescaler and 16-bit counter and the data will be automatically scaled to fit the playback period if necessary.

The FIFO can generate a number of interrupts for FIFO management. They are the FIFO full, empty, half-empty, overflow and underflow. Each of these interrupts can be individually masked if required.

16.1 Register Summary

Listed below are the registers with their offset from the base address (0x105B0). All registers can only be accessed via Byte (8-bit) mode but the FIFO can only be accessed via Word (16-bit) mode.

Address Offset	Register	Default Value	Reference
0x00	PWM_CTRL0 - PCM Control Register	0x00	Section 16.2.1
0x01	PWM_CTRL1 - PWM Control Register	0x00	Section 16.2.2
0x02	PWM_PRESCALER - PWM Prescaler Register	0x00	Section 16.2.3
0x03	PWM_CNTL - PWM Counter Register (LSB)	0x00	Section 16.2.4
0x04	PWM_CNTH - PWM Counter Register (MSB)	0x00	Section 16.2.5
0x05	PWM_CMP0L - Comparator 0 Value Register (LSB)	0x00	Section 16.2.6
0x06	PWM_CMP0H - Comparator 0 Value Register (MSB)	0x00	Section 16.2.7
0x07	PWM_CMP1L - Comparator 1Value Register (LSB)	0x00	Section 16.2.8
0x08	PWM_CMP1H - Comparator 1 Value Register (MSB)	0x00	Section 16.2.9
0x09	PWM_CMP2L - Comparator 2 Value Register (LSB)	0x00	Section 16.2.10
0x0A	PWM_CMP2H - Comparator 2 Value Register (MSB)	0x00	Section 16.2.11
0x0B	PWM_CMP3L - Comparator 3 Value Register (LSB)	0x00	Section 16.2.12
0x0C	PWM_CMP3H - Comparator 3 Value Register (MSB)	0x00	Section 16.2.13
0x0D	PWM_CMP4L - Comparator 4 Value Register (LSB)	0x00	Section 16.2.14
0x0E	PWM_CMP4H - Comparator 4 Value Register (MSB)	0x00	Section 16.2.15

0x0F	PWM_CMP5L - Comparator 5 Value Register (LSB)	0x00	Section 16.2.16
0x10	PWM_CMP5H - Comparator 5 Value Register (MSB)	0x00	Section 16.2.17
0x11	PWM_CMP6L - Comparator 6 Value Register (LSB)	0x00	Section 16.2.18
0x12	PWM_CMP6H - Comparator 6 Value Register (MSB)	0x00	Section 16.2.19
0x13	PWM_CMP7L - Comparator 7 Value Register (LSB)	0x00	Section 16.2.20
0x14	PWM_CMP7H - Comparator 7 Value Register (MSB)	0x00	Section 16.2.21
0x15	PWM_TOGGLE0 - Channel 0 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask Register	0x00	Section 16.2.22
0x16	PWM_TOGGLE1 - Channel 1 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask Register	0x00	Section 16.2.23
0x17	PWM_TOGGLE2 - Channel 2 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask Register	0x00	Section 16.2.24
0x18	PWM_TOGGLE3 - Channel 3 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask Register	0x00	Section 16.2.25
0x19	PWM_TOGGLE4 - Channel 4 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask Register	0x00	Section 16.2.26
0x1A	PWM_TOGGLE5 - Channel 5 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask Register	0x00	Section 16.2.27
0x1B	PWM_TOGGLE6 - Channel 6 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask Register	0x00	Section 16.2.28
0x1C	PWM_TOGGLE7 - Channel 7 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask Register	0x00	Section 16.2.29
0x1D	PWM_OUT_CLR_EN - PWM OUT Clear Enable Register	0x00	Section 16.2.30
0x1E	PWM_CTRL_BL_CMP8 - Control Block CMP8 Value Register	0x00	Section 16.2.31
0x1F	PWM_INIT - PWM Initialization Register	0x00	Section 16.2.32
0x20	PWM_INTMASK - PWM Interrupt Mask Register	0x00	Section 16.2.33
0x21	PWM_INTSTATUS - PWM Interrupt Status Register	0x00	Section 16.2.34
0x22	PWM_SAMPLE_FREQ_H - PWM Data Sampling Frequency High Byte Register	0x56	Section 16.2.35
0x23	PWM_SAMPLE_FREQ_L - PWM Data Sampling Frequency Low Byte Register	0x22	Section 16.2.36
0x24	PCM_VOLUME - PCM Volume Register	0x00	Section 16.2.37
0x3C	PWM_BUFFER - PCM Buffer Register	0xXXXX	Section 16.2.38

Table 16-1 - Overview of PWM Registers

16.2 Register Details

16.2.1 PWM_CTRL0 - PCM Control Register (address offset: 0x00)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	PWM_CH01_AUTO	RW	1'b0	Set to 1 to use channels 0 & 1 for audio playback via the internal FIFO.
6	PWM_CH01_MONO	RW	1'b0	Set to 1 for mono audio. Both channels will playback the same data.

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
5	PWM_CH01_8BIT	RW	1'b0	Set to 1 for 8-bit audio data.
4	PWM_CH01_SCALE	RW	1'b0	Set to 1 if automatic scaling of data is required.
3	PWM_CH01_FILTER	RW	1'b0	Set to 1 if PCM filter is required. This is valid only with PWM_CH01_AUTO and PCM_EN set.
2	PCM_EN	RW	1'b0	Set to 1 if channel 0 and channel 1 are used for PCM playback.
1	PWM_DEV_EN	RW	1'b0	Set to 1 to enable PWM. This bit is not really used.
0	PWM_SOFT_RESET	RW	1'b0	Set to 1 to reset PWM.

Table 16-2 - PWM_CTRL0 - PCM Control Register

16.2.2 PWM_CTRL1 - PWM Control Register (address offset: 0x01)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	Reserved	-	-	-
6	PCM_BIYTEREVERSE	RW	1'b0	0: Data is treated as in big endian format For 8-bit, this has no effect. 1: Data is treated as in little endian format For 8-bit, this has no effect. For 16-bit, the lower and upper bytes are swapped.
5	PWM_INT	RW	1'b0	PWM Interrupt
4	PWM_INT_MASK	RW	1'b0	Interrupt mask bit for PWM_INT
2:1	PWM_TRIGGER_EN	RW	2'h0	PWM trigger enable: 00 Disabled 01 Positive Edge 10 Negative Edge 11 Any Edge
0	PWM_EN	RW	1'b0	Set to 1 to enable PWM.

Table 16-3 - PWM_CTRL1 - PWM Control Register

16.2.3 PWM_PRESCALER - PWM Prescaler Register (address offset: 0x02)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	PRESCALER	RW	8'h00	8-bit Prescaler value.

Table 16-4 - PWM_PRESCALER - PWM Prescaler Register

16.2.4 PWM_CNTL - PWM Counter Register (LSB) (address offset: 0x03)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	CNT16_LSB	RW	8'h00	16-bit counter LSB.

Table 16-5 - PWM_CNTL - PWM Counter Register (LSB)

16.2.5 PWM_CNTH - PWM Counter Register (MSB) (address offset: 0x04)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	CNT16_MSB	RW	8'h00	16-bit counter MSB.

Table 16-6 - PWM_CNTH - PWM Counter Register (MSB)

16.2.6 PWM_CMP0L - Comparator 0 Value Register (LSB) (address offset: 0x05)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	CMP16_0_LSB	RW	8'h00	LSB of comparator 0 16-bit value.

Table 16-7 - PWM_CMP0L - Comparator 0 Value Register (LSB)

16.2.7 PWM_CMP0H - Comparator 0 Value Register (MSB) (address offset: 0x06)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	CMP16_0_MSB	RW	8'h00	MSB of comparator 0 16-bit value.

Table 16-8 - PWM_CMP0H - Comparator 0 Value Register (MSB)

16.2.8 PWM_CMP1L - Comparator 1 Value Register (LSB) (address offset: 0x07)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	CMP16_1_LSB	RW	8'h00	LSB of comparator 1 16-bit value.

Table 16-9 - PWM_CMP1L - Comparator 1 Value Register (LSB)

16.2.9 PWM_CMP1H - Comparator 1 Value Register (MSB) (address offset: 0x08)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	CMP16_1_MSB	RW	8'h00	MSB of comparator 1 16-bit value.

Table 16-10 - PWM_CMP1H - Comparator 1 Value Register (MSB)

16.2.10 PWM_CMP2L - Comparator 2 Value Register (LSB) (address offset: 0x09)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	CMP16_2_LSB	RW	8'h00	LSB of comparator 2 16-bit value.

Table 16-11 - PWM_CMP2L - Comparator 2 Value Register (LSB)

16.2.11 PWM_CMP2H - Comparator 2 Value Register (MSB) (address offset: 0x0A)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	CMP16_2_MSB	RW	8'h00	MSB of comparator 2 16-bit value.

Table 16-12 - PWM_CMP2H - Comparator 2 Value Register (MSB)

16.2.12 PWM_CMP3L - Comparator 3 Value Register (LSB) (address offset: 0x0B)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	CMP16_3_LSB	RW	8'h00	LSB of comparator 3 16-bit value.

Table 16-13 - PWM_CMP3L - Comparator 3 Value Register (LSB)

16.2.13 PWM_CMP3H - Comparator 3 Value Register (MSB) (address offset: 0x0C)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	CMP16_3_MSB	RW	8'h00	MSB of comparator 3 16-bit value.

Table 16-14 - PWM_CMP3H - Comparator 3 Value Register (MSB)

16.2.14 PWM_CMP4L - Comparator 4 Value Register (LSB) (address offset: 0x0D)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	CMP16_4_LSB	RW	8'h00	LSB of comparator 4 16-bit value.

Table 16-15 - PWM_CMP4L - Comparator 4 Value Register (LSB)

16.2.15 PWM_CMP4H - Comparator 4 Value Register (MSB) (address offset: 0x0E)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	CMP16_4_MSB	RW	8'h00	MSB of comparator 4 16-bit value.

Table 16-16 - PWM_CMP4H - Comparator 4 Value Register (MSB)

16.2.16 PWM_CMP5L - Comparator 5 Value Register (LSB) (address offset: 0x0F)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	CMP16_5_LSB	RW	8'h00	LSB of comparator 5 16-bit value.

Table 16-17 - PWM_CMP5L - Comparator 5 Value Register (LSB)

16.2.17 PWM_CMP5H - Comparator 5 Value Register (MSB) (address offset: 0x10)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	CMP16_5_MSB	RW	8'h00	MSB of comparator 5 16-bit value.

Table 16-18 - PWM_CMP5H - Comparator 5 Value Register (MSB)

16.2.18 PWM_CMP6L - Comparator 6 Value Register (LSB) (address offset: 0x11)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	CMP16_6_LSB	RW	8'h00	LSB of comparator 6 16-bit value.

Table 16-19 - PWM_CMP6L - Comparator 6 Value Register (LSB)

16.2.19 PWM_CMP6H - Comparator 6 Value Register (MSB) (address offset: 0x12)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	CMP16_6_MSB	RW	8'h00	MSB of comparator 6 16-bit value.

Table 16-20 - PWM_CMP6H - Comparator 6 Value Register (MSB)

16.2.20 PWM_CMP7L - Comparator 7 Value Register (LSB) (address offset: 0x13)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	CMP16_7_LSB	RW	8'h00	LSB of comparator 7 16-bit value.

Table 16-21 - PWM_CMP7L - Comparator 7 Value Register (LSB)

16.2.21 PWM_CMP7H - Comparator 7 Value Register (MSB) (address offset: 0x14)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	CMP16_7_MSB	RW	8'h00	MSB of comparator 7 16-bit value.

Table 16-22 - PWM_CMP7H - Comparator 7 Value Register (MSB)

16.2.22 PWM_TOGGLE0 - Channel 0 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask Register (address offset: 0x15)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	TOGGLE_EN_0	RW	8'h00	Channel 0 PWM OUT toggle comparator mask (each bit corresponds to 1 comparator)

Table 16-23 - PWM_TOGGLE0 - Channel 0 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask

16.2.23 PWM_TOGGLE1 - Channel 1 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask Register (address offset: 0x16)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	TOGGLE_EN_1	RW	8'h00	Channel 1 PWM OUT toggle comparator mask (each bit corresponds to 1 comparator)

Table 16-24 - PWM_TOGGLE1 - Channel 1 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask

16.2.24 PWM_TOGGLE2 - Channel 2 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask Register (address offset: 0x17)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	TOGGLE_EN_2	RW	8'h00	Channel 2 PWM OUT toggle comparator mask (each bit corresponds to 1 comparator)

Table 16-25 - PWM_TOGGLE2 - Channel 2 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask Register

16.2.25 PWM_TOGGLE3 - Channel 3 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask Register (address offset: 0x18)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	TOGGLE_EN_3	RW	8'h00	Channel 3 PWM OUT toggle comparator mask (each bit corresponds to 1 comparator)

Table 16-26 - PWM_TOGGLE3 - Channel 3 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask Register

16.2.26 PWM_TOGGLE4 - Channel 4 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask Register (address offset: 0x19)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	TOGGLE_EN_4	RW	8'h00	Channel 4 PWM OUT toggle comparator mask (each bit corresponds to 1 comparator)

Table 16-27 - PWM_TOGGLE4 - Channel 4 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask Register

16.2.27 PWM_TOGGLE5 - Channel 5 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask Register (address offset: 0x1A)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	TOGGLE_EN_5	RW	8'h00	Channel 5 PWM OUT toggle comparator mask (each bit corresponds to 1 comparator)

Table 16-28 - PWM_TOGGLE5 - Channel 5 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask Register

16.2.28 PWM_TOGGLE6 - Channel 6 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask Register (address offset: 0x1B)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	TOGGLE_EN_6	RW	8'h00	Channel 6 PWM OUT toggle comparator mask (each bit corresponds to 1 comparator)

Table 16-29 - PWM_TOGGLE6 - Channel 6 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask Register

16.2.29 PWM_TOGGLE7 - Channel 7 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask Register (address offset: 0x1C)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	TOGGLE_EN_7	RW	8'h00	Channel 7 PWM OUT toggle comparator mask (each bit corresponds to 1 comparator)

Table 16-30 - PWM_TOGGLE7 - Channel 7 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask Register

16.2.30 PWM_OUT_CLR_EN - PWM OUT Clear Enable Register (address offset: 0x1D)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	CLR_EN	RW	8'h00	PWM Out clear enable

Table 16-31 - PWM_OUT_CLR_EN - PWM OUT Clear Enable Register

16.2.31 PWM_CTRL_BL_CMP8 - Control Block CMP8 Value Register (address offset: 0x1E)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	CTRL_BL_CMP8	RW	8'h00	Control block CMP8 value. 0: continuous 1: one-shot, 2 - 255

Table 16-32 - PWM_CTRL_BL_CMP8 - Control Block CMP8 Value Register

16.2.32 PWM_INIT - PWM Initialization Register (address offset: 0x1F)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	INIT	RW	8'h00	PWM Initialisation register

Table 16-33 - PWM_INIT - PWM Initialization Register

16.2.33 PWM_INTMASK - PWM Interrupt Mask Register (address offset: 0x20)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:6	Reserved	-	-	-
5	FIFO_EMPTY_MASK	RW	1'b0	FIFO empty interrupt mask
4	FIFO_FULL_MASK	RW	1'b0	FIFO full interrupt mask
3	FIFO_HALF_MASK	RW	1'b0	FIFO half full interrupt mask
2	FIFO_OV_MASK	RW	1'b0	FIFO overflow interrupt mask
1	FIFO_UNDER_MASK	RW	1'b0	FIFO underflow interrupt mask
0	PWM_INT_MASK	RW	1'b0	PWM_INT interrupt mask (same as bit[4] of PWM_CTRL)

Table 16-34 - PWM_INTMASK - PWM Interrupt Mask Register

16.2.34 PWM_INTSTATUS - PWM Interrupt Status Register (address offset: 0x21)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:6	Reserved	-	-	-
5	FIFO_EMPTY_INT	RW1C	1'b0	FIFO empty interrupt; write 1 to clear.
4	FIFO_FULL_INT	RW1C	1'b0	FIFO full interrupt; write 1 to clear.
3	FIFO_HALF_INT	RW1C	1'b0	FIFO half full interrupt; write 1 to clear.
2	FIFO_OV_INT	RW1C	1'b0	FIFO overflow interrupt; write 1 to clear.
1	FIFO_UNDER_INT	RW1C	1'b0	FIFO underflow interrupt; write 1 to clear.
0	PWM_INT	RW1C	1'b0	PWM interrupt; write 1 to clear. (same as bit[5] of PWM_CTRL1)

Table 16-35 - PWM_INTSTATUS - PWM Interrupt Status Register

16.2.35 PWM_SAMPLE_FREQ_H - PWM Data Sampling Frequency High Byte Register (address offset: 0x22)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	PWM_SAMPLE_FREQ_H	RW	8'h56	PWM Data Sampling Frequency High Byte

Table 16-36 - PWM_SAMPLE_FREQ_H - PWM Data Sampling Frequency High Byte Register

16.2.36 PWM_SAMPLE_FREQ_L - PWM Data Sampling Frequency Low Byte Register (address offset: 0x23)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	PWM_SAMPLE_FREQ_L	RW	8'h22	PWM Data Sampling Frequency Low Byte

Table 16-37 - PWM_SAMPLE_FREQ_L - PWM Data Sampling Frequency Low Byte Register

16.2.37 PCM_VOLUME - PCM Volume Register (address offset: 0x24)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description	
7:5	Reserved	-	-	-	
4:0	Volume Control	RW	5'h00	0x00	Mute
				0x01	~6.25%
				0x02	~12.5%
				0x03	~19%
				0x04	~25%
				0x05	~31%
				0x06	~37%
				0x07	~44%
				0x08	~50%
				0x09	~56%
				0x0A	~63%
				0x0B	~69%
				0x0C	~75%
				0x0D	~81%
				0x0E	~88%
				0x0F	~94%
				0x10	~100%
				0x11-0x1F	Illegal; forced to 0x10

Table 16-38 - PCM_VOLUME - PCM Volume Register

16.2.38 PWM_BUFFER - PCM Buffer Register (address offset: 0x3C)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
15:0	Buffer Data	WO	-	The entry point to the FIFO. It must be written in 16-bit. For 8-bit data, the upper 8-bit will be ignored.

Table 16-39 - PWM_BUFFER - PCM Buffer Register

17 Flash Controller

There are two ways to access the memory control unit. One is via the CPU I/O interface and the other via the 1-wire debugger interface. The CPU I/O interface is described here.

From the CPU I/O interface, memory transfer can occur between the Flash and the Program Memory, and between the Flash and the Data Memory. A number of the serial Flash commands are also supported, and the CPU may issue these commands to the Flash.

As this is a shared resource between the debugger interface and CPU I/O interface, the interface must acquire the resource first before performing any of the activities. This is done by reading a test-and-set semaphore. If the interface reads a 0 from the semaphore it can safely assume it has acquired the resource. Any further read to this semaphore will return a 1 until it is released by the interface that acquired the resource.

If both the debugger and CPU attempt to acquire the resource while it is free at exactly the same time, priority is given to the debugger and the CPU interface will read a 1 instead.

Until the semaphore is acquired, the semaphore is the only register any of the interfaces can read. Once the semaphore is acquired by the interface, the interface will have full access to all the registers in the control unit.

If an interface that does not have the resource writes to the control unit registers they will be ignored while a read from any of the control unit registers will always return 0.

17.1 Register Summary

Listed below are the registers with their offset from the base address (0x10800). All registers can only be accessed via Byte (8-bit) mode.

Address Offset	Register	Default Value	Reference
0x00	RSADDR0 – Memory Start Address Register (LSB)	0x00	Section 23.2.1
0x01	RSADDR1 – Memory Start Address Register (Byte 1)	0x00	Section 23.2.2
0x02	RSADDR2 – Memory Start Address Register (MSB)	0x00	Section 23.2.3
0x03	FSADDR0 – Flash Start Address Register (LSB)	0x00	Section 23.2.4
0x04	FSADDR1 – Flash Start Address Register (Byte 1)	0x00	Section 23.2.5
0x05	FSADDR2 – Flash Start Address Register (MSB)	0x00	Section 23.2.6
0x06	BLENGTH0 – Data Byte Length Register (LSB)	0x00	Section 23.2.7
0x07	BLENGTH1 – Data Byte Length Register (Byte 1)	0x00	Section 23.2.8
0x08	BLENGTH2 – Data Byte Length Register (MSB)	0x00	Section 23.2.9
0x09	COMMAND – Command Register	0x00	Section 23.2.1
0x0A	Reserved	-	
0x0B	SEMAPHORE – Semaphore Register	0x00	Section 23.2.11
0x0C	CONFIG – Configuration Register	0x00	Section 23.2.12
0x0D	STATUS – Status Register	0x00	Section 23.2.13

0x0E	CRCL – Flash Content CRC Register (LSB)	0xXX	Section 23.2.14
0x0F	CRCH – Flash Content CRC Register (MSB)	0xXX	Section 23.2.15
0x7C	CHIPID0 – Chip ID Register (LSB) (only via 1-wire debugger)	0xXX	Section 23.2.16
0x7D	CHIPID1 – Chip ID Register (Byte 1) (only via 1-wire debugger)	0xXX	Section 23.2.17
0x7E	CHIPID2 – Chip ID Register (Byte 2) (only via 1-wire debugger)	0xXX	Section 23.2.18
0x7F	CHIPID3 – Chip ID Register (MSB) (only via 1-wire debugger)	0xXX	Section 23.2.19
0x80	DRWDATA – Data Register	0x00	Section 23.2.20

Table 17-1 - Overview of Data Capture Interface Registers

17.2 Register Details

17.2.1 RSADDR0 – Memory Start Address Register (LSB) (address offset: 0x00)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	-	WO	0x00	LSB of the start address of the memory location to perform read/write for either program or data memory

Table 17-2 - RSADDR1 – Memory Start Address Register (LSB)

17.2.2 RSADDR1 – Memory Start Address Register (Byte 1) (address offset: 0x01)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	-	WO	0x00	Byte 1 of the start address of the memory location to perform read/write for either program or data memory

Table 17-3 - RSADDR1 – Memory Start Address Register (Byte 1)

17.2.3 RSADDR2 – Memory Start Address Register (MSB) (address offset: 0x02)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	-	WO	0x00	MSB of the start address of the memory location to perform read/write for either program or data memory

Table 17-4 - RSADDR2 – Memory Start Address Register (MSB)

Note: *The memory start address must always be aligned to a 4-byte boundary in both read/write cases. The address is treated as a Double-Word address (e.g. 01 is byte address 4).*

17.2.4 FSADDR0 – Flash Start Address Register (LSB) (address offset: 0x03)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	-	WO	0x00	LSB of the start address of the flash location to perform read/write

Table 17-5 - FSADDR0 – Flash Start Address Register (LSB)

17.2.5 FSADDR1 – Flash Start Address Register (Byte 1) (address offset: 0x04)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	-	WO	0x00	Byte 1 of the start address of the flash location to perform read/write

Table 17-6 - FSADDR1 – Flash Start Address Register (Byte 1)

17.2.6 FSADDR2 – Flash Start Address Register (MSB) (address offset: 0x05)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	-	WO	0x00	MSB of the start address of the flash location to perform read/write

Table 17-7 - FSADDR2 – Flash Start Address Register (MSB)

Note: *The flash start address must always be aligned to 256-byte boundary in the write case, and can be any value in the read case. The address is treated as a byte address (e.g. 01 is byte address 1).*

17.2.7 BLENGTH0 – Data Byte Length Register (LSB) (address offset: 0x06)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	-	WO	0x00	LSB of the Byte Length to transfer

Table 17-8 - BLENGTH0 – Data Byte Length Register (LSB)

17.2.8 BLENGTH1 – Data Byte Length Register (Byte 1) (address offset: 0x07)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	-	WO	0x00	Byte 1 of the Byte Length to transfer

Table 17-9 - BLENGTH1 – Data Byte Length Register (Byte 1)

17.2.9 BLENGTH2 – Data Byte Length Register (MSB) (address offset: 0x08)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	-	WO	0x00	MSB of the Byte Length to transfer

Table 17-10 - BLENGTH2 – Data Byte Length Register (MSB)

Note 1: *When the flash is the destination (write case), the byte length must be a multiple of 256 bytes (1 page of flash entry). There is no such restriction on byte length if the flash is the source (read case).*

Note 2: *The registers must be set to (byte length - 1). For example, if the byte length is 256, then BLENGTH0 is set to 255 and BLENGTH1 and BLENGTH2 are set to 0.*

17.2.10 COMMAND – Command Register (address offset: 0x09)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	-	WO	0x00	Command to perform. See section 23.3.

Table 17-11 - COMMAND – Command Register

17.2.11 SEMAPHORE – Semaphore Register (address offset: 0x0B)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	-	RW	0x00	Semaphore value If a 0 is read, then the control unit's resource is allocated to whichever that does the test. This register is then automatically set to 1. If a 1 is read, then the resource is being used and not free. This semaphore can be released by only the interface which acquires the semaphore with writing a 1 to this register. All other registers in this control unit are not readable or writeable until this semaphore is acquired. If both the CPU and Debugger test this semaphore register at the same time when it is free, priority is given to the Debugger and the CPU will read a 1 instead.

Table 17-12 - SEMAPHORE – Semaphore Register

17.2.12 CONFIG – Configuration Register (address offset: 0x0C)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:2	Reserved	-	-	Reserved bits
1:0	SPI_CLK	WO	2'b0	The serial SPI clock speed to the serial flash 0x0: Flash SPI clock speed = 1/2 System clock speed 0x1: Flash SPI clock speed = 1/3 System clock speed 0x2: Flash SPI clock speed = 1/4 System clock speed 0x3: Flash SPI clock speed = 1/5 System clock speed

Table 17-13 - CONFIG – Configuration Register

17.2.13 STATUS – Status Register (address offset: 0x0D)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7	Reserved	-	-	-
6	Control Busy	RO	1'b0	1: The control unit is busy. This means no other command should be issued. When this bit is set, bits 7, 3-0 may not be valid until this bit is cleared.
5	Data Read Ready	RO	1'b0	1: Data for read is available at data read port
4	Data Write Ready	RO	1'b0	1: Data for write can be written to data write port
3	Reserved	-	-	-
2	Reserved	-	-	-
1	Reserved	-	-	-
0	Write in Progress	RO	1'b0	1: Flash Write Operations in Progress

Table 17-14 - STATUS – Status Register

17.2.14 CRCL – Flash Content CRC Register (LSB) (address offset: 0x0E)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	-	RO	0xXX	LSB of the CRC16 of the flash content. The CRC is calculated upon reset when flash content is transferred to the programme memory, and the CRC is based on the polynomial X16+X15+X2+1

Table 17-15 - CRCL – Flash Content CRC Register (LSB)

17.2.15 CRCH – Flash Content CRC Register (MSB) (address offset: 0x0F)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	-	RO	0xXX	MSB of the CRC16 of the flash content. The CRC is calculated upon reset when flash content is transferred to the programme memory, and the CRC is based on the polynomial X16+X15+X2+1

Table 17-16 - CRCH – Flash Content CRC Register (MSB)

17.2.16 CHIPID0 – Chip ID Register (LSB) (address offset: 0x7C)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	-	RO	0xXX	LSB of the 32-bit chip ID, only accessible via the 1-wire debugger. The same ID is available to the CPU in another register address

Table 17-17 - CHIPID0 – Chip ID Register (LSB)

17.2.17 CHIPID1 – Chip ID Register (Byte 1) (address offset: 0x7D)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	-	RO	0xXX	Byte 1 of the 32-bit chip ID, only accessible via the 1-wire debugger. The same ID is available to the CPU in another register address

Table 17-18 - CHIPID1 – Chip ID Register (Byte 1)

17.2.18 CHIPID2 – Chip ID Register (Byte 2) (address offset: 0x7E)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	-	RO	0xXX	Byte 2 of the 32-bit chip ID, only accessible via the 1-wire debugger. The same ID is available to the CPU in another register address

Table 17-19 - CHIPID2 – Chip ID Register (Byte 2)

17.2.19 CHIPID3 – Chip ID Register (MSB) (address offset: 0x7F)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	-	RO	0xXX	MSB of the 32-bit chip ID, only accessible via the 1-wire debugger. The same ID is available to the CPU in another register address

Table 17-20 - CHIPID3 – Chip ID Register (MSB)

17.2.20 DRWDATA – Data Register (address offset: 0x80)

Bit	Name	Type	Default Value	Description
7:0	-	RW	0x00	This is the data read or write port used to transfer data in and out of this control unit. Up to 64 addresses may be used. When bit 4 of STATUS is not set, writing to this port will have no effect. When bit 5 of STATUS is not set, reading this port will return 0.

Table 17-21 - DRWDATA – Data Register

17.3 Flash Controller Commands

The following commands are supported by the control unit. The command is initiated once the command register is updated. No further command can be entered until the current one is completed. If two successive commands, regardless of what they are, are entered while one is on-going, the current operation will be aborted. The two commands will not be executed either.

The commands can be divided into 2 groups. The first group consists of commands that are supported directly by the serial flash. The second group consists of commands that initiate data transfer between the debugger/CPU interface and flash, debugger/CPU interface and program/data memory, or flash and program/data memory.

The following table lists the first group of commands. If executing any of these commands that require data input, write the required data to the DRWDATA register.

Command	Code	Description
CMDWREN	0x06	The Write Enable (WREN) instruction is for setting the Write Enable Latch (WEL) bit. Those instructions such as PP, SE, BE, CE, and WRSR, which are intended to change the device content, should be set every time after the WREN instruction sets the WEL bit.
CMDWRDI	0x04	The Write Disable (WRDI) instruction is for

Command	Code	Description
		resetting the Write Enable Latch (WEL) bit. The WEL bit is reset by the following situations: - Power-up - Write Disable (WRDI) instruction completion - Write Status Register (WRSR) instruction completion - Page Program (PP) instruction completion - Sector Erase (SE) instruction completion - Block Erase (BE) instruction completion - Chip Erase (CE) instruction completion
CMDWRSR	0x01	The WRSR instruction is for changing the values of Status Register Bits. Before sending WRSR instruction, the Write Enable (WREN) instruction must be executed first. The WRSR instruction can change the value of Block Protect (BP1 - bit3, BP0 - bit2) bits to define the protected area of memory (as shown in table 2). The WRSR can also set or reset the Status Register Write Disable (SRWD - bit 7) bit in accordance with Write Protection (WP#) pin signal. The WRSR instruction cannot be executed once the Hardware Protected Mode (HPM) is entered. This instruction has no effect on bits 6, 5, 1 and 0.
CMDRDID	0x9F	The RDID instruction is for reading the manufacturer ID of 1-byte and followed by Device ID of 2-byte. The MXIC Manufacturer ID and Device ID are listed as table of "ID Definitions" of the MXIC specification. While Program/Erase operation is in progress, it will not decode the RDID instruction, so there's no effect on the cycle of program/erase operation which is currently in progress.
CMDRDSR	0x05	The RDSR instruction is for reading Status Register Bits. The Read Status Register can be read at any time (even in program/erase/write status register condition) and continuously. It is recommended to check the Write in Progress (WIP) bit before sending a new instruction when a program, erase, or write status register operation is in progress. The status data can be read back from the STATUS register. The bits 7, 3-0 of STATUS reflect the content from this flash command.
CMDRDSFDP	0x5A	The Serial Flash Discoverable Parameter (SFDP) standard provides a consistent method of describing the functional and feature capabilities of serial flash devices in a standard set of internal parameter tables. Refer to MXIC specification for the parameter details.

Command	Code	Description
CMDSE	0x20	Sector erase; Sector address can be set at FSADDRx.
CMDBE1 / CMDBE2	0x52 / 0xD8	Block erase; Block address can be set at FSADDRx.
CMDCE1 / CMDCE2	0x60 / 0xC7	Chip erase.
CMDDP	0xB9	The Deep Power-down (DP) instruction is for setting the device to minimizing the power consumption. During the Deep Power-down mode, the device is not active and all Write/Program/Erase instruction are ignored.
CMDRDP	0xAB	The RDP instruction is for releasing from Deep Power Down Mode.

Table 17-22 - Flash Controller Command Group 1

The following table lists the commands that initiate data transfer between the Debugger/CPU interface and flash/program/data memory, or between flash and program/data. Each command allows the option to reset the CPU, or reboot the system, or allow the system to continue.

Command	Code	Description
CMDDBG2P1	0xE0	Initiates data transfer from Debugger Interface to Program Memory. The start address of the Program Memory destination will be dictated by RSADDRx which must be 32-bit aligned. The number of bytes to transfer will be dictated by BLENGTHx. Data to be transferred will be in DRWDATA.
CMDDBG2P2	0xE1	Similar to CMDDBG2P1 except at the end of the transfer, a CPU reset will be performed.
CMDDBG2P3	0xE2	Similar to CMDDBG2P1 except at the end of the transfer, a system reboot will be performed.
CMDDBG2D1	0xE4	Similar to CMDDBG2P1 except the destination is the Data Memory.
CMDDBG2D2	0xE5	Similar to CMDDBG2P2 except the destination is the Data Memory.
CMDDBG2D3	0xE6	Similar to CMDDBG2P3 except the destination is the Data Memory.
CMDDBG2F1	0xE8	Initiates data transfer from Debugger Interface to Flash Memory. The start address of the Flash Memory destination will be dictated by FSADDRx which must be 256-byte aligned. The number of bytes to transfer will be dictated by BLENGTHx and must be multiples of 256 bytes.

Command	Code	Description
		Data to be transferred will be in DRWDATA.
CMDDBG2F2	0xE9	Similar to CMDDBG2F1 except at the end of the transfer, a CPU reset will be performed.
CMDDBG2F3	0xEA	Similar to CMDDBG2F1 except at the end of the transfer, a system reboot will be performed.
CMDP2F1	0xF0	Initiates data transfer from Program Memory to Flash Memory. The start address of the Program Memory destination will be dictated by RSADDRx which must be 32-bit aligned. The start address of the Flash Memory destination will be dictated by FSADDRx which must be 256-byte aligned. The number of bytes to transfer will be dictated by BLENGTHx and must be multiples of 256 bytes.
CMDP2F2	0xF1	Similar to CMDP2F1 except at the end of the transfer, a CPU reset will be performed.
CMDP2F3	0xF2	Similar to CMDP2F1 except at the end of the transfer, a system reboot will be performed.
CMDF2P1	0xF4	Initiates data transfer from Flash Memory to Program Memory. The start address of the Program Memory destination will be dictated by RSADDRx which must be 32-bit aligned. The start address of the Flash Memory destination will be dictated by FSADDRx which must be 256-byte aligned. The number of bytes to transfer will be dictated by BLENGTHx.
CMDF2P2	0xF5	Similar to CMDF2P1 except at the end of the transfer, a CPU reset will be performed.
CMDF2P3	0xF6	Similar to CMDF2P1 except at the end of the transfer, a system reboot will be performed.
CMDD2F1	0xF8	Initiates data transfer from Data Memory to Flash Memory. The start address of the Data Memory destination will be dictated by RSADDRx which must be 32-bit aligned. The start address of the Flash Memory destination will be dictated by FSADDRx which must be 256-byte aligned. The number of bytes to transfer will be dictated by BLENGTHx and must be multiples of 256 bytes.
CMDD2F2	0xF9	Similar to CMDD2F1 except at the end of the transfer, a CPU reset will be performed.
CMDD2F3	0xFA	Similar to CMDD2F1 except at the end of the transfer, a system reboot will be performed.
CMDF2D1	0xFC	Initiates data transfer from Flash Memory to Data Memory. The start address of the Data Memory destination will be dictated by RSADDRx which must be 32-bit aligned. The start address of the Flash Memory destination will be

Command	Code	Description
		dictated by FSADDRx which must be 256-byte aligned. The number of bytes to transfer will be dictated by BLENGTHx.
CMDF2D2	0xFD	Similar to CMDF2D1 except at the end of the transfer, a CPU reset will be performed.
CMDF2D3	0xFE	Similar to CMDF2D1 except at the end of the transfer, a system reboot will be performed.
CMDHALT	0xFF	This command forces halt immediately to the CPU. The use should be avoided as this cannot be undone. Only a system reset will remove the halt effect.

Table 17-23 - Flash Controller Command Group 2

18 Contact Information

Headquarters – Singapore

Bridgetek Pte Ltd
178 Paya Lebar Road, #07-03
Singapore 409030
Tel: +65 6547 4827
Fax: +65 6841 6071

E-mail (Sales) sales.apac@brtchip.com
E-mail (Support) support.apac@brtchip.com

Branch Office – Taipei, Taiwan

Bridgetek Pte Ltd, Taiwan Branch
2 Floor, No. 516, Sec. 1, Nei Hu Road, Nei Hu District
Taipei 114
Taiwan, R.O.C.
Tel: +886 (2) 8797 5691
Fax: +886 (2) 8751 9737

E-mail (Sales) sales.apac@brtchip.com
E-mail (Support) support.apac@brtchip.com

Branch Office - Glasgow, United Kingdom

Bridgetek Pte. Ltd.
Unit 1, 2 Seaward Place, Centurion Business Park
Glasgow G41 1HH
United Kingdom
Tel: +44 (0) 141 429 2777
Fax: +44 (0) 141 429 2758

E-mail (Sales) sales.emea@brtichip.com
E-mail (Support) support.emea@brtchip.com

Branch Office – Vietnam

Bridgetek VietNam Company Limited
Lutaco Tower Building, 5th Floor, 173A Nguyen Van Troi,
Ward 11, Phu Nhuan District,
Ho Chi Minh City, Vietnam
Tel : 08 38453222
Fax : 08 38455222

E-mail (Sales) sales.apac@brtchip.com
E-mail (Support) support.apac@brtchip.com

Web Site

http://brtchip.com/

Distributor and Sales Representatives

Please visit the Sales Network page of the Bridgetek Web site for the contact details of our distributor(s) and sales representative(s) in your country.

Appendix A – References

Document References

Datasheet DS_FT930/1/2/3

FT900 toolchain

Firmware examples

Acronyms and Abbreviations

Terms	Description
ADC	Analogue to Digital Converter
ATX	Analog Transceiver (USB PHY)
BCD	Battery Charger Detection
CPRM	Content Protection for Recordable Media
CPU	Central Processing unit
CRC	Cyclic Redundancy Check
DAC	Digital to Analogue Converter
FIFO	First In First Out
GPIO	General Purpose Input Output
I^2C	Inter-Integrated Circuit
IP	Intellectual Property
LSB	Least Significant Byte
MMC	Multi Media Card
MSB	Most Significant Byte
SPI	Serial Peripheral Interface
PHY	Physical Layer
PWM	Pulse Width Modulation
RAM	Random Access Memory
UART	Universal Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter
V_{DM_SRC}	D- Source Voltage

Terms	Description
V_{DP_SRC}	D+ Source Voltage
USB	Universal Serial Bus
USB-IF	USB Implementers Forum

Appendix B – List of Tables & Figures

List of Tables

Table 2-1 - FT93x Program Memory Organization 14
Table 3-1 - Peripheral Availability on FT93x Series Models 16
Table 3-2 - Register Map for FT93x Series 16
Table 4-1 - Notations used in Register Description 17
Table 5-1 - Overview of General System Registers 19
Table 5-2 - CHIPID - Chip ID Register 20
Table 5-3 - FT93x Series Chip ID Configuration 20
Table 5-4 - CHIPCFG - Chip Configuration Register 20
Table 5-5 - CLKCFG - Clock Configuration Register 21
Table 5-6 - PMCFG - Power Management Configuration Register 22
Table 5-7 - Reserved 23
Table 5-8 - Reserved 23
Table 5-9 - MSC0CFG - Miscellaneous Configuration Register 24
Table 5-10 - Pin Configuration Register Description 25
Table 5-11 - Pin 00 – 03 Register 25
Table 5-12 - Pin 04 – 07 Register 25
Table 5-13 - Pin 08 – 11 Register 25
Table 5-14 - Pin 12 – 15 Register 26
Table 5-15 - Pin 16 – 19 Register 26
Table 5-16 - Pin 20 – 23 Register 26
Table 5-17 - Pin 24 – 27 Register 26
Table 5-18 - Pin 28 – 31 Register 26
Table 5-19 - Pin 32 – 35 Register 26
Table 5-20 - Pin 36 – 39 Register 27
Table 5-21 - GPIO Configuration Register Description 27
Table 5-22 - GPIO 00 – 07 Configuration Register 28
Table 5-23 - GPIO 08 – 15 Configuration Register 28
Table 5-24 - GPIO 16 – 23 Configuration Register 28
Table 5-25 - GPIO 24 – 31 Configuration Register 28
Table 5-26 - GPIO 32 – 39 Configuration Register 29
Table 5-27 - GPIO 00 – 31 Value Register 29
Table 5-28 - GPIO 32 – 39 Value Register 29
Table 5-29 - GPIO 00 – 31 Interrupt Enable Register 29
Table 5-30 - GPIO 32 – 39 Interrupt Enable Register 29
Table 5-31 - GPIO 00 – 31 Interrupt Pending Register 30

Table 5-32 - GPIO 32 – 39 Interrupt Pending Register 30
Table 5-33 - DAC_ADC_CONF - ADC/DAC Configuration/Status Register 31
Table 5-34 - DAC_ADC_CNT - ADC/DAC Count Register 31
Table 5-35 - DAC_ADC_DATA - ADC/DAC Data Register 32
Table 5-36 - GLOBAL_RESET_STATUS - Global Reset and Status Register 32
Table 6-1 - Interrupt Assignment Table 33
Table 6-2 - Overview of Interrupt Control Registers 34
Table 6-3 - IRQ00-03 Assignment Register 34
Table 6-4 - IRQ04-07 Assignment Register 34
Table 6-5 - IRQ08-11 Assignment Register 35
Table 6-6 - IRQ12-15 Assignment Register 35
Table 6-7 - IRQ16-19 Assignment Register 35
Table 6-8 - IRQ20-23 Assignment Register 36
Table 6-9 - IRQ24-27 Assignment Register 36
Table 6-10 - IRQ28-31 Assignment Register 36
Table 6-11 - IRQ Control Register 37
Table 7-1 - Overview of USB Device Registers 40
Table 7-2 - DC_ADDRESS_ENABLE – Address Register 40
Table 7-3 - DC_MODE – Mode Register 40
Table 7-4 - DC_INT_ENABLE – Interrupt Enable Register 41
Table 7-5 - DC_EP_INT_ENABLE – Endpoints Interrupt Enable Register 41
Table 7-6 - DC_EP0_CONTROL – Endpoint 0 Control Register 41
Table 7-7 - DC_EP0_STATUS – Endpoint 0 Status Register 42
Table 7-8 - DC_EP0_BUFFER_LENGTH – Endpoint 0 Buffer Length Register 42
Table 7-9 - DC_EP0_BUFFER – Endpoint 0 Buffer Register 42
Table 7-10 - DC_EP(x)_CONTROL – Endpoint Control Registers 43
Table 7-11 - DC_EP(x)_STATUS – Endpoint Status Registers 44
Table 7-12 - DC_EP(x)_BUFFER_LENGTH_LSB – Endpoint Buffer Length LSB Registers 44
Table 7-13 - DC_EP(x)_BUFFER_LENGTH_MSB – Endpoint Buffer Length MSB Registers 45
Table 7-14 - DC_EP(x)_BUFFER – Endpoint Buffer Registers 45
Table 7-15 - DC_INT_STATUS – Interrupt Status Register 45
Table 7-16 - DC_EP_INT_STATUS – Endpoints Interrupt Status Register 46
Table 7-17 - DC_FRAME_NUMBER_LSB – Frame Number LSB Register 46
Table 7-18 - DC_FRAME_NUMBER_MSB – Frame Number MSB Register 46
Table 8-1 - Overview of SD Host Registers 49
Table 8-2 - 11.2.1 SDH_AUTO_CMD23_ARG2 – Auto CMD23 Argument 2 Register 49
Table 8-3 - 11.2.2 SDH_BLK_SIZE – Block Size Register 50
Table 8-4 - 11.2.3 SDH_BLK_COUNT – Block Count Register 50
Table 8-5 - 11.2.4 SDH_ARG_1 – Argument 1 Register 50

Table 8-6 - 11.2.5 SDH_TNSFER_MODE – Transfer Mode Register 51
Table 8-7 - 11.2.6 SDH_CMD – Command Register 52
Table 8-8 - 11.2.7 SDH_RESPONSE – Response Register 52
Table 8-9 - 11.2.8 SDH_BUF_DATA – Buffer Data Port Register 52
Table 8-10 - 11.2.9 SDH_PRESENT_STATE – Present State Register 54
Table 8-11 - SDH_HST_CNTL_1 – Host Control 1 Register 54
Table 8-12 - SDH_PWR_CNTL – Power Control Register 54
Table 8-13 - SDH_BLK_GAP_CNTL – Block Gap Control Register 55
Table 8-14 - SDH_CLK_CNTL – Clock Control Register 55
Table 8-15 - SDH_TIMEOUT_CNTL – Timeout Control Register 56
Table 8-16 - SDH_SW_RST – Software Reset Register 56
Table 8-17 - SDH_NRML_INT_STATUS – Normal Interrupt Status Register 57
Table 8-18 - SDH_ERR_INT_STATUS – Error Interrupt Status Register 57
Table 8-19 - SDH_NRML_INT_ENABLE – Normal Interrupt Status Enable Register 58
Table 8-20 - SDH_ERR_INT_ENABLE – Error Interrupt Status Enable Register 58
Table 8-21 - SDH_NRML_INT_SGNL_ENABLE – Normal Interrupt Signal Enable Register 59
Table 8-22 - SDH_ERR_INT_SGNL_ENABLE – Error Interrupt Signal Enable Register 60
Table 8-23 - SDH_AUTO_CMD12_ERR_STATUS – Auto CMD12 Error Status Register 60
Table 8-24 - SDH_HOST_CNTL_2 – Host Control 2 Register 60
Table 8-25 - SDH_CAP_1 – Capabilities Register 1 61
Table 8-26 - SDH_CAP_2 – Capabilities Register 2 62
Table 8-27 - SDH_RSRV_1 – Reserved 1 Register 62
Table 8-28 - SDH_RSRV_2 – Reserved 2 Register 62
Table 8-29 - SDH_FORCE_EVT_CMD_ERR_STATUS – Force Event Register for Auto CMD Error Status 63
Table 8-30 - SDH_FORCE_EVT_ERR_INT_STATUS – Force Event for Error Interrupt Status Register 63
Table 8-31 - SDH_RSRV_3 – Reserved 3 Register 63
Table 8-32 - SDH_RSRV_4 – Reserved 4 Register 64
Table 8-33 - SDH_PRST_INIT – Preset value for initialization 64
Table 8-34 - SDH_PRST_DFLT_SPD – Preset value for default speed 64
Table 8-35 - SDH_PRST_HIGH_SPD – Preset value for the high speed 65
Table 8-36 - SDH_PRST_SDR12 – Preset value for SDR12 65
Table 8-37 - SDH_PRST_SDR25 – Preset value for SDR25 66
Table 8-38 - SDH_PRST_SDR50 – Preset value for SDR50 66
Table 8-39 - SDH_PRST_SDR104 – Preset value for SDR104 66
Table 8-40 - SDH_PRST_DDR50 – Preset value for DDR50 67
Table 8-41 - SDH_RSRV_5 – Reserved 5 Register 67
Table 8-42 - SDH_HC_VER – Host Controller Version Register 67
Table 8-43 - SDH_VNDR_0 – Vendor-defined 0 Register 68

Table 8-44 - SDH_VNDR_1 – Vendor-defined 1 Register 68
Table 8-45 - SDH_VNDR_2 – Vendor-defined 2 Register 69
Table 8-46 - SDH_VNDR_3 – Vendor-defined 3 Register 69
Table 8-47 - SDH_VNDR_4 – Vendor-defined 4 Register 69
Table 8-48 - SDH_VNDR_5 – Vendor-defined 5 Register 69
Table 8-49 - SDH_VNDR_6 – Vendor-defined 6 Register 69
Table 8-50 - SDH_VNDR_7 – Vendor-defined 7 Register 70
Table 8-51 - SDH_VNDR_8 – Vendor-defined 8 Register 70
Table 8-52 - SDH_VNDR_9 – Vendor-defined 9 Register 70
Table 8-53 - SDH_RSRV_6 – Reserved 6 Register 70
Table 8-54 - SDH_HW_ATTR – Hardware Attributes Register 70
Table 8-55 - SDH_CPR_MOD_CNTL – Cipher Mode Control Register 71
Table 8-56 - SDH_CPR_MOD_STATUS – Cipher Mode Status Register 72
Table 8-57 - SDH_CPR_MOD_STATUS_EN – Cipher Mode Status Enable Register 72
Table 8-58 - SDH_CPR_MOD_SIG_EN – Cipher Mode Signal Enable Register 72
Table 8-59 - SDH_IN_DATA_LSB – Input Data LSB Register 72
Table 8-60 - SDH_IN_DATA_MSB – Input Data MSB Register 72
Table 8-61 - SDH_IN_KEY_LSB – Input Key LSB Register 73
Table 8-62 - SDH_IN_KEY_MSB – Input Key MSB Register 73
Table 8-63 - SDH_OUT_DATA_LSB – Output Data LSB Register 73
Table 8-64 - SDH_OUT_DATA_MSB – Output Data MSB Register 73
Table 8-65 - SDH_SCRT_CONS_DATA – Secret Constant Table Data Port 73
Table 9-1 - Overview of UART Registers 76
Table 9-2 - UART mode selection 77
Table 9-3 - UART_RBR - Receiver Buffer Register 78
Table 9-4 - UART_THR - Transmitter Holding Register 79
Table 9-5 - UART_DIV_LSB - Divisor LSB Register 79
Table 9-6 - UART_DIV_MSB - Divisor MSB Register 79
Table 9-7 - UART_INT_ENABLE - Interrupt Enable Register 79
Table 9-8 - UART_INT_STATUS - Interrupt Status Register 80
Table 9-9 - Interrupt Status Register Software Handling 80
Table 9-10 - UART_FCR - FIFO Control Register – 550 mode 81
Table 9-11 - UART_RCVR - FIFO Trigger Level – 550 mode 81
Table 9-12 - UART_FCR - FIFO Control Register – 650 mode 82
Table 9-13 - UART_RCVR - FIFO Trigger Level – 650 mode 82
Table 9-14 - XMIT FIFO Trigger Level 82
Table 9-15 - UART_LCR - Line Control Register 83
Table 9-16 - UART_MCR - Modem Control Register 84
Table 9-17 - UART_LSR - Line Status Register 85

Table 9-18 - UART_MSR - Modem Status Register 86
Table 9-19 - UART_SPR - SPR Register 86
Table 9-20 - UART_EFR - Enhanced Feature Register 87
Table 9-21 - UART_XON1 - XON1 Register 87
Table 9-22 - UART_XON2 - XON2 Register 87
Table 9-23 - UART_XOFF1 - XOFF1 Register 87
Table 9-24 - UART_XOFF2 - XOFF2 Register 87
Table 9-25 - UART_ASR - Additional Status Register 88
Table 9-26 - UART_RFL - Receiver FIFO Level Register 88
Table 9-27 - UART_TFL - Transmitter FIFO Level Register 88
Table 9-28 - UART_ICR - ICR Register 89
Table 9-29 - UART_ACR- Additional Control Register 91
Table 9-30 - UART_CPR - Clock Prescaler Register 91
Table 9-31 - UART_TCR - Time Clock Register 92
Table 9-32 - UART_CKS Clock Select Register 92
Table 9-33 - UART_TTL - Transmitter Trigger Level Register 93
Table 9-34 - UART_RTL - Receiver Trigger Level Register 93
Table 9-35 - UART_FCL - Flow Control Level LSB Register 93
Table 9-36 - UART_FCH - Flow Control Level Register MSB 93
Table 9-37 - UART_ID1 - Identification 1 Register 94
Table 9-38 - UART_ID2 - Identification 2 Register 94
Table 9-39 - UART_ID3 - Identification 3 Register 94
Table 9-40 - UART_REV - Revision Register 94
Table 9-41 - UART_CSR - Channel Software Reset Register 94
Table 9-42 - UART_NMR - Nine Bit Mode Register 95
Table 9-43 - UART_MDM - Modem Disable Mask Register 95
Table 9-44 - UART_RFC - Readable FCR Register 96
Table 9-45 - UART_GDS - Good Data Status Register 96
Table 9-46 - UART_RSRV_1 - Reserved 1 Register 96
Table 9-47 - UART_PIDX - Port Index Register 96
Table 9-48 - UART_CKA - Clock Alteration Register 96
Table 10-1 - Timers/Watchdog Operation 97
Table 10-2 - Overview of Timers/Watchdog Registers 98
Table 10-3 - TIMER_CONTROL_0 - Timers Control Register 0 98
Table 10-4 - TIMER_CONTROL_1 - Timers Control Register 1 98
Table 10-5 - TIMER_CONTROL_2 - Timers Control Register 2 99
Table 10-6 - TIMER_CONTROL_3 - Timers Control Register 3 99
Table 10-7 - TIMER_CONTROL_4 - Timers Control Register 4 99
Table 10-8 - TIMER_INT - Timers Interrupt Register 99

Table 10-9 - TIMER_SELECT - Timers A..D Select Register 100
Table 10-10 - TIMER_WDG - Watchdog Start Value 100
Table 10-11 - TIMER_WRITE_LS - Timer A..D Start Value 7:0 100
Table 10-12 - TIMER_WRITE_MS - Timer A..D Start Value 15:8 100
Table 10-13 - TIMER_PRESC_LS - Prescaler Start Value 7:0 100
Table 10-14 - TIMER_PRESC_MS - Prescaler Start Value 15:8 100
Table 10-15 - TIMER_READ_LS - Timer A..D Current Value 7:0 101
Table 10-16 - TIMER_READ_MS - Timer A..D Current Value 15:8 101
Table 11-1 - Overview of SPI Master Registers 102
Table 11-2 - SPIM_CNTL – Control Register 103
Table 11-3 - SPIM_STATUS – Status Register 104
Table 11-4 - SPIM_DATA – Receiver and Transmitter Data Registers 104
Table 11-5 - SPIM_SLV_SEL_CNTL – Slave Select Control Register 104
Table 11-6 - SPIM_FIFO_CNTL – FIFO Control Register 105
Table 11-7 - SPIM_TNSFR_FRMT_CNTL – Transfer Format Control Register 105
Table 11-8 - SPIM_ALT_DATA – Alternative SPI Master Data Register 105
Table 11-9 - SPIM_RX_FIFO_COUNT – SPI Master RX FIFO Count Register 106
Table 11-10 - SPIM_CNTL_2 – Control 2 Register 106
Table 11-11 - SPIM_STATUS_2 – Status 2 Register 106
Table 11-12 - SPIM_FIFO_CNTL_2 – FIFO Control 2 Register 107
Table 11-13 - SPIM_TX_FIFO_COUNT – SPI Master TX FIFO Count Register 107
Table 11-14 - SPIM_BAUD – SPI Master Baud Register 107
Table 12-1 - Overview of SPI Slave Registers 108
Table 12-2 - SPIS_CNTL – Control Register 109
Table 12-3 - SPIS_STATUS – Status Register 109
Table 12-4 - SPIS_DATA – Receiver and Transmitter Data Registers 110
Table 12-5 - SPIS_SLV_SEL_CNTL – Slave Select Control Register 110
Table 12-6 - SPIS_FIFO_CNTL – FIFO Control Register 110
Table 12-7 - SPIS_TNSFR_FRMT_CNTL – Transfer Format Control Register 111
Table 12-8 - SPIS_ALT_DATA – Alternative SPI Slave Data Register 111
Table 12-9 - SPIS_RX_FIFO_COUNT – SPI Slave RX FIFO Count Register 111
Table 12-10 - SPIS_CNTL_2 – Control 2 Register 112
Table 12-11 - SPIS_STATUS_2 – Status 2 Register 112
Table 12-12 - SPIS_FIFO_CNTL_2 – FIFO Control 2 Register 113
Table 12-13 - SPIS_TX_FIFO_COUNT – SPI Slave TX FIFO Count Register 113
Table 12-14 - SPIS_BAUD – SPI Slave Baud Register 113
Table 13-1 - Overview of I2C Master Registers 114
Table 13-2 - I2CM_SLV_ADDR – Slave Address Register 115
Table 13-3 - I2CM_CNTL – Control Register 115

Table 13-4 - I2CM_STATUS – Status Register....116
Table 13-5 - I2CM_DATA – Receive / Transmit Data Register....116
Table 13-6 - I2CM_TIME_PERIOD – Timer Period Register....116
Table 13-7 - I2CM_HS_TIME_PERIOD – High Speed Timer Period Register....117
Table 13-8 - I2CM_FIFO_LEN – FIFO Mode Byte Length....117
Table 13-9 - I2CM_FIFO_INT_ENABLE – FIFO Mode Interrupt Enable....117
Table 13-10 - I2CM_FIFO_INT_PEND – FIFO Mode Interrupt Pending....118
Table 13-11 - I2CM_FIFO_DATA - FIFO Data Register....118
Table 13-12 - I2CM_TRIG - Trigger Register....118
Table 14-1 - Overview of I2C Master Registers....119
Table 14-2 - I2CS_OWN_ADDR – Own Address Register....120
Table 14-3 - I2CS_CNTL – Control Register....120
Table 14-4 - I2CS_STATUS – Status Register....121
Table 14-5 - I2CS_DATA – Receive / Transmit Data Register....121
Table 14-6 - I2CS_FIFO_LEN – FIFO Mode Byte Length....121
Table 14-7 - I2CS_FIFO_INT_ENABLE – FIFO Mode Interrupt Enable....121
Table 14-8 - I2CS_FIFO_INT_PEND – FIFO Mode Interrupt Pending....122
Table 14-9 - I2CS_FIFO_DATA - FIFO Data Register....122
Table 14-10 - I2CS_TRIG - Trigger Register....122
Table 15-1 - Overview of RTC Registers....123
Table 15-2 - RTC_TIME - Time Register....123
Table 15-3 - RTC_DATE - Date Register....124
Table 15-4 - RTC_AALARM1 – Auto Alarm 1 Register....124
Table 15-5 - Alarm 1 Mask Bits....124
Table 15-6 - RTC_AALARM2 – Auto Alarm 2 Register....125
Table 15-7 - Alarm 2 Mask Bits....125
Table 15-8 - RTC_CTRL – Control Register....125
Table 15-9 - RTC_STAT - Status Register....126
Table 15-10 - RTC_TRIM – Trimming Value Register....127
Table 15-11 - RTC_SLE_TIME – Sleep Time Register....127
Table 15-12 - RTC_SLE_DATE - Sleep Date Register....128
Table 15-13 – RTC_COMP_PER - Compare Period Register....128
Table 16-1 - Overview of PWM Registers....130
Table 16-2 - PWM_CTRL0 - PCM Control Register....131
Table 16-3 - PWM_CTRL1 - PWM Control Register....131
Table 16-4 - PWM_PRESCALER - PWM Prescaler Register....131
Table 16-5 - PWM_CNTL - PWM Counter Register (LSB)....132
Table 16-6 - PWM_CNTH - PWM Counter Register (MSB)....132
Table 16-7 - PWM_CMP0L - Comparator 0 Value Register (LSB)....132

Table 16-8 - PWM_CMP0H - Comparator 0 Value Register (MSB) 132
Table 16-9 - PWM_CMP1L - Comparator 1 Value Register (LSB).....132
Table 16-10 - PWM_CMP1H - Comparator 1 Value Register (MSB).....132
Table 16-11 - PWM_CMP2L - Comparator 2 Value Register (LSB) 133
Table 16-12 - PWM_CMP2H - Comparator 2 Value Register (MSB).....133
Table 16-13 - PWM_CMP3L - Comparator 3 Value Register (LSB) 133
Table 16-14 - PWM_CMP3H - Comparator 3 Value Register (MSB).....133
Table 16-15 - PWM_CMP4L - Comparator 4 Value Register (LSB) 133
Table 16-16 - PWM_CMP4H - Comparator 4 Value Register (MSB).....134
Table 16-17 - PWM_CMP5L - Comparator 5 Value Register (LSB) 134
Table 16-18 - PWM_CMP5H - Comparator 5 Value Register (MSB).....134
Table 16-19 - PWM_CMP6L - Comparator 6 Value Register (LSB) 134
Table 16-20 - PWM_CMP6H - Comparator 6 Value Register (MSB).....134
Table 16-21 - PWM_CMP7L - Comparator 7 Value Register (LSB) 134
Table 16-22 - PWM_CMP7H - Comparator 7 Value Register (MSB).....135
Table 16-23 - PWM_TOGGLE0 - Channel 0 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask 135
Table 16-24 - PWM_TOGGLE1 - Channel 1 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask 135
Table 16-25 - PWM_TOGGLE2 - Channel 2 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask Register 135
Table 16-26 - PWM_TOGGLE3 - Channel 3 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask Register 135
Table 16-27 - PWM_TOGGLE4 - Channel 4 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask Register 135
Table 16-28 - PWM_TOGGLE5 - Channel 5 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask Register 136
Table 16-29 - PWM_TOGGLE6 - Channel 6 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask Register 136
Table 16-30 - PWM_TOGGLE7 - Channel 7 OUT Toggle Comparator Mask Register 136
Table 16-31 - PWM_OUT_CLR_EN - PWM OUT Clear Enable Register 136
Table 16-32 - PWM_CTRL_BL_CMP8 - Control Block CMP8 Value Register 136
Table 16-33 - PWM_INIT - PWM Initialization Register 136
Table 16-34 - PWM_INTMASK - PWM Interrupt Mask Register.....137
Table 16-35 - PWM_INTSTATUS - PWM Interrupt Status Register.....137
Table 16-36 - PWM_SAMPLE_FREQ_H - PWM Data Sampling Frequency High Byte Register.....137
Table 16-37 - PWM_SAMPLE_FREQ_L - PWM Data Sampling Frequency Low Byte Register 138
Table 16-38 - PCM_VOLUME - PCM Volume Register.....138
Table 16-39 - PWM_BUFFER - PCM Buffer Register.....138
Table 17-1 - Overview of Data Capture Interface Registers 140
Table 17-2 - RSADDR1 – Memory Start Address Register (LSB) 140
Table 17-3 - RSADDR1 – Memory Start Address Register (Byte 1) 140
Table 17-4 - RSADDR2 – Memory Start Address Register (MSB) 140
Table 17-5 - FSADDR0 – Flash Start Address Register (LSB) 141
Table 17-6 - FSADDR1 – Flash Start Address Register (Byte 1).....141
Table 17-7 - FSADDR2 – Flash Start Address Register (MSB).....141

Table 17-8 - BLENGTH0 – Data Byte Length Register (LSB) 141
Table 17-9 - BLENGTH1 – Data Byte Length Register (Byte 1) 141
Table 17-10 - BLENGTH2 – Data Byte Length Register (MSB) 141
Table 17-11 - COMMAND – Command Register 142
Table 17-12 - SEMAPHORE – Semaphore Register 142
Table 17-13 - CONFIG – Configuration Register 142
Table 17-14 - STATUS – Status Register 143
Table 17-15 - CRCL – Flash Content CRC Register (LSB) 143
Table 17-16 - CRCH – Flash Content CRC Register (MSB) 143
Table 17-17 - CHIPID0 – Chip ID Register (LSB) 143
Table 17-18 - CHIPID1 – Chip ID Register (Byte 1) 143
Table 17-19 - CHIPID2 – Chip ID Register (Byte 2) 144
Table 17-20 - CHIPID3 – Chip ID Register (MSB) 144
Table 17-21 - DRWDATA – Data Register 144
Table 17-22 - Flash Controller Command Group 1 146
Table 17-23 - Flash Controller Command Group 2 148

List of Figures

Figure 2.1 - FT93x System Architecture 13
Figure 2.2 - FT93x Boot Control 15
Figure 2.3 - FT93x Debugging Support 15
Figure 9.1 - ICR registers write access 89
Figure 9.2 - ICR registers read access 90

Appendix C – Revision History

Document Title: BRT_AN_010 FT93x_User_Manual
Document Reference No.: BRT_000053
Clearance No.: BRT#067
Product Page: http://brtchip.com/product/
Document Feedback: Send Feedback

Revision	Changes	Date
1.0	Initial release	2017-xx-xx